

# Tools & Shops

ANNUAL ISSUE

**Building  
the essential  
workbench**

**Tool Test:  
9 midsize  
tablesaws**

**Versatile shop  
in a two-car  
garage**

**Ripping and  
crosscutting  
basics**

**Mobile bases**

\$7.99/Canada \$8.99

A Taunton Publication



DISPLAY UNTIL FEBRUARY 29, 2004



Workbench  
plans combine  
the best of the old  
and the new

# Cold,

Look for these qualifying products:



Stock No. 629004K  
\$799\*



Stock No. 1791210  
\$1499\*



Stock No. 1791279K  
\$749\*



Stock No. 1791216K  
\$849\*



Stock No. 1791220K  
starting at \$649\*



Stock No. 710002  
\$599\*  
Available November 1, 2003



Stock No. 708528  
Stock No. 708584  
\$1399\*



Stock No. 708775K  
starting at \$849\*



Stock No. 708639 \$299\*  
Stock No. 708626CK \$449\*



Stock No. 354169  
\$399\*



Stock No. 708115K \$499\*  
Stock No. 710115K \$599\*



Stock No. 708457K  
\$549\*



Stock No. 708301K  
starting at \$599\*



Stock No. 708531  
\$899\*  
Available November 1, 2003



Stock No. 7087508  
\$1099\*

\*Price shown is Manufacturer Suggested Retail Price. Offer valid September 1, 2003 through April 30, 2004. For promotion details, visit your dealer, see our website at [www.jettools.com](http://www.jettools.com), or call 1-800-274-6848

LIMITED  
LIFETIME  
WARRANTY

JET Performax Powermatic

## Now with Lifetime Warranty!

As expected from the industry innovator, only the JET Family of Brands offers you a Limited Lifetime Warranty on many of our most popular products.

# hard cash



## \$50 or \$100? It's your choice.

Buy one of the qualifying products and we'll reimburse you \$100 on the purchase of a second JET®, Powermatic®, or Performax® machine (with net purchase price of \$349 or more) OR up to \$50 on the purchase of JET branded accessories. Pick up your second machine or accessories immediately — or until April 30, 2004.

Look for the green tags on the industry's hottest sellers at participating dealers.  
Cold, hard cash. It's an easy choice.

# JET

Powermatic, Performax and JET  
A Family Of Brands

# Tools & Shops

## Departments

- 6 Contributors
- 8 Letters
- 14 Methods of Work  
A safer crosscut sled; Edge-jointing long boards with a router
- 22 Shop Design  
A shop in the backyard
- 30 Tools & Materials  
Battery-powered nailers; Spotlight on the latest tools
- 88 Current Work  
A gallery of our readers' tools and benches
- 96 A Closer Look  
How an induction motor works
- 102 Rules of Thumb  
Work at the right height
- 110 Reviews  
The latest woodworking books
- 118 Questions & Answers  
The scoop on Japanese chisels; How to flatten wavy veneer
- 130 Cutoffs  
Conquering clutter

**On the Cover:**

Contributing editor Lon Schleining puts the finishing touches on a robust workbench. For plans, see p. 38. Photo: Asa Christiana



*A shop inspired by school memories, p. 46*



*A clever tool case, p. 75*



*Roll-away garage workshop, p. 70*

# Articles

## 38 The Essential Workbench

Workhorse bench combines the best of the old and the new

BY LON SCHLEINING

## 46 A Shop Inspired by School Memories

This well-lit workspace features an open floor plan organized for efficient workflow

BY MARK BELLONBY

ON OUR WEB SITE: Take a virtual tour of the author's shop

## 50 TOOL TEST 9 Midsize Tablesaws

How contractor-style saws and hybrids measure up

BY ROLAND JOHNSON

## 56 A TABLESAW PRIMER Ripping and Crosscutting

The proper techniques help ensure accurate and safe cuts

BY KELLY MEHLER

ON OUR WEB SITE: Watch a video of the author using a crosscut sled

## 62 Protecting Surfaces in the Shop

Machines, jigs, and benches all benefit from being sealed and waxed

BY CHRIS A. MINICK

## 66 Make a Wooden Scraper

This shopmade cabinet scraper will tame the most difficult woods

BY STEPHEN SHEPHERD

## 70 Roll-Away Workshop

With wheel-mounted tools and cabinets, a two-car garage easily transforms into a versatile workshop

BY BILL ENDRESS

ON OUR WEB SITE: See the rolling workshop in action

## 75 A Clever Tool Case

Built-in stands keep an essential tool kit at the ready

BY YEUNG CHAN

## 78 Soundproof a Basement Shop

Two-pronged attack arrests both airborne and vibratory noises

BY MARK CORKE

## 82 Mobile Bases

For shops large or small, mobility offers convenience, as long as the base is stable and rolls smoothly

BY CLIFF COLLEY



Ripping and crosscutting on the tablesaw, p. 56



Protecting surfaces in the shop, p. 62



Mobile bases, p. 82

# Contributors

The unique hand-drawn illustrations found in *Fine Woodworking* convey not only concepts and construction but the beauty of woodworking as well. **Bob La Pointe** has been illustrating for us for more than 15 years. In this digital age, he still relies on markers and color pencils to render his masterpieces (see “The Essential Workbench”). La Pointe lives on Cape Cod (Massachusetts) with his wife and daughter.

When not parked in front of the drawing board, La Pointe is likely to be knee-deep in Wellfleet harbor tending to the acres of clams and oysters that he cultivates for restaurants both in New England and across the country.



**Cliff Colley** (“Mobile Bases”) is a shop instructor at Plymouth South High School in Plymouth, Mass. A graduate of North Bennet Street School’s Cabinet and Furniture Making



program, he has published work in *Design Book Seven* (The Taunton Press, 1996). Although his woodworking and teaching skills may be impressive, he is most proud of his new role as father to his three stepchildren, Sarah, Paul (with Colley above), and Olivia.

**Rick McCaskill** (Shop Design) has been a woodworker for more than 35 years. He is vice president of business development and marketing for a biometric company and lives in Simi Valley, Calif. He spends a lot of his spare time enjoying his new woodshop, especially the times he gets to help his grandchildren assemble their own projects on a child-size workbench.

**Barry Wixey** (A Closer Look) has been designing tools for more than 20 years and woodworking machinery in particular for more than 15 years. His company has designed products for a number of manufacturers, including Delta and DeWalt. His interest in woodworking started as a child and peaked when he and his wife, Cora, designed and built their first home. Now they spend their spare time remodeling a 1901 bungalow in Seattle.



**Tom LeRoy** (Rules of Thumb) is a physical therapist in Brunswick, Maine, who travels throughout the state to provide safety training to companies, to treat injured workers, and to modify employee work habits and workstations. LeRoy uses these same safe work habits in his woodshop, a converted Boy Scout camp building.

**Mark Bellonby** (“A Shop Inspired by School Memories”), an architect, came to the profession by way of woodworking, studying in the late 1960s under Karl M. Pacanovsky at the Hill School in Pottstown, Pa. The school’s strong woodworking program emphasized design and drafting skills in a setting that encouraged close collaboration among the fine arts, metalworking, and woodworking studios. Bellonby currently is a design partner in a Washington, D.C., architecture firm, designing office and apartment buildings, condominiums, and hotels.



**Yeung Chan** (“A Clever Tool Case”) escaped Communist China in 1968, avoiding armed patrols and negotiating rugged, icy mountains to get to Hong Kong, and eventually landed in New York. After a few years on the East Coast, Chan moved to San Francisco, where he took a job with a furniture manufacturer. In 1989, he began his present career as a furniture maker and is well known for his handmade tools. A line of Veritas detail chisels modeled after Chan’s set is available from Lee Valley Tools ([www.leevalley.com](http://www.leevalley.com)).

## Fine Woodworking

EDITOR **Anatole Burkin**

ART DIRECTOR **Michael Pekovich**

MANAGING EDITOR **Matthew Teague**

SENIOR EDITOR **Asa Christiana**

ASSOCIATE EDITORS

**William Duckworth**

**Thomas G. Begnal, Mark Schofield**

ASSISTANT EDITORS

**Matt Berger, Karen E. Wales**

SENIOR COPY/PRODUCTION EDITOR

**Thomas McKenna**

COPY/PRODUCTION EDITOR

**Julie Rlsint**

ASSOCIATE ART DIRECTOR **Kelly J. Dunton**

ASSISTANT ART DIRECTOR **Rodney Diaz**

SHOP MANAGER **John White**

EDITORIAL ASSISTANT **Christopher X. Baumann**

CONTRIBUTING EDITORS

**Tagge Frid, Christian Becksvoort,**

**Marlo Rodriguez, Gary Rogowski,**

**Mike Dunbar, Lon Schleining,**

**Garrett Hack, Roland Johnson**

CONSULTING EDITOR **Chris Minick**

METHODS OF WORK **Jim Richey**

INDEXER **Harriet Hodges**

PUBLISHER **Tim Schreiner**

SR. MARKETING MANAGER **Alan Whitney**

MARKETING MANAGER **Karen Lutjen**

SINGLE COPY SALES MANAGER **Mark Stiekman**

CIRCULATION MANAGER **Jeanne Todaro**

ADVERTISING DIRECTOR **David Gray**

ASSOCIATE ADVERTISING MANAGER

**Linda Abbott**

SENIOR NATIONAL ACCOUNT MANAGER

**John Dyckman**

NATIONAL ACCOUNTS MANAGER

**William M. McLachlan**

ASSOCIATE ACCOUNTS MANAGERS

**Kate Kelly, John Lagan**

ADVERTISING SALES SUPPORT ASSOCIATE

**Christina Kryzanski**

### WOODWORKING BOOKS & VIDEOS

EXECUTIVE EDITOR **Helen Albert**

**Fine Woodworking:** (ISSN: 0361-3453) is published bimonthly, with a special seventh issue in the winter, by The Taunton Press, Inc., Newtown, CT 06470-5506. Telephone 203-426-8171. Periodicals postage paid at Newtown, CT 06470 and at additional mailing offices. GST paid registration #123210981.

**Subscription Rates:** U.S. and Canada, \$34.95 for one year, \$59.95 for two years, \$83.95 for three years (in U.S. dollars, please). Canadian GST included. Outside U.S. and Canada, \$41.95 for one year, \$73.95 for two years, \$104.95 for three years (in U.S. dollars, please). Single copy, \$7.99. Single copies outside the U.S. and possessions, \$8.99.

**Postmaster:** Send address changes to *Fine Woodworking*, The Taunton Press, Inc., 63 S. Main St., PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

Printed in the USA

## HOW TO CONTACT US:

### Fine Woodworking

The Taunton Press, 63 S. Main St., PO Box 5506,  
Newtown, CT 06470-5506 203-426-8171

[www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)

### Editorial:

To contribute an article, give a tip, or ask a question, contact *Fine Woodworking* at the address above or:

Call: **800-309-8955**  
Fax: **203-270-6753**  
Email: [fw@taunton.com](mailto:fw@taunton.com)

### Customer Service:

For subscription inquiries, you can:

- Visit our subscriber service section at:  
[www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)
- Email us: [fwservice@taunton.com](mailto:fwservice@taunton.com)
- Call our customer support center:  
To report an address change, inquire about an order, or solve a problem, call:  
**800-477-8727**  
To subscribe, purchase back issues, books or videos, or give a gift, call:  
**800-888-8286**

### Advertising:

To find out about advertising:

Call: **800-309-8954**  
Email: [fwads@taunton.com](mailto:fwads@taunton.com)

Member Audit  
Bureau of Circulation



### Retail:

If you'd like to carry *Fine Woodworking* in your store, call the Taunton Trade Company at:  
**866-505-4674**

### Mailing List:

Occasionally we make our subscribers' names and addresses available to responsible companies whose products or services we feel may be of some interest to you. Most of our subscribers find this to be a helpful way to learn about useful resources and services. If you don't want us to share your name with other companies, please contact our Customer Service Department at:

**800-477-8727**

### The Taunton Guarantee:

If at any time you're not completely satisfied with *Fine Woodworking*, you can cancel your subscription and receive a full and immediate refund of the entire subscription price. No questions asked.

Copyright 2003 by The Taunton Press, Inc. No reproduction without permission of The Taunton Press, Inc.

## 40,000+ Decorative Building Products



### At The Lowest Prices!

- Architectural Mouldings & Millwork
- Columns & Capitals
- Balustrading
- Wrought Iron Components
- Lighting
- Stamped Steel & Polymer Ceiling Tiles
- Brass Tubing & Fittings
- Period & Contemporary Hardware
- Kitchen & Bathroom Accessories
- Cabinetry
- Cabinet & Furniture Components
- Knobs & Pulls
- Surfacing Materials
- Wainscoting
- Wall Coverings

SHOP ONLINE!  
FREE CATALOG!

[www.Archpro.com](http://www.Archpro.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 56

## Gerstner® CLASSIC HARDWOOD TOOL CHESTS

Made in America since 1906



For a full color catalog call:  
**H. Gerstner & Sons, Inc.**  
(937) 228-1662  
[www.GerstnerUSA.com/fw.htm](http://www.GerstnerUSA.com/fw.htm)

READER SERVICE NO. 190

Join us for 18<sup>th</sup> century woodworking at Pennsylvania's premier technical college!

Build two magnificent pieces of 18<sup>th</sup> century furniture under the supervision of  
2003 Cartouche Award winner Gene Landon

### Pennsylvania Tavern Table

Feb. 21-22 & Feb. 28-29

Cost: \$799

### Hanging Corner Cupboard

March 27-28, April 17-18, May 1-2

Cost: \$999

## Pennsylvania College of Technology

PENNSTATE



Don't miss this rare opportunity.  
Seating is limited.

Register online at [ttc.pct.edu/tools](http://ttc.pct.edu/tools)  
or call (570) 327-4775.

An affiliate of The Pennsylvania State University

Penn College operates on a nondiscriminatory basis.

READER SERVICE NO. 189

## Eliminator RC quick-change router chuck for the Porter Cable® Routers

Porter Cable is a Registered Trade Mark of the Porter Cable Corporation

**\$54.95**  
Includes Shipping

### Fits all Porter Cable 1/2 inch routers

- Change bits in seconds with a T-handle Allen wrench
- No more nicking your fingers or knuckles with 2 wrenches
- Adapters  
1/4" - \$ 8.50  
3/8" - \$10.50
- Our chuck exceeds the holding power of the standard chuck.

Made in  
the USA

Satisfaction guaranteed  
or your Money back

(703-644-5647)  
(Fax 703-569-2394)



See write up in Tools & Shops Winter 2001/2002 No. 153 page 34

For more information contact:

J.P. Walsh & J.L. Marmo Enterprises, Inc.  
7649 Long Pine Drive, Springfield, VA 22151

READER SERVICE NO. 217

# Letters

## Elongated holes made easy

In his article "Anatomy of a Chest of Drawers" (*FWW* #163, pp. 36-43), Will Neptune recommends using slotted screw holes. I've never shied away from using them, but you must admit they are a lot more complicated than popping in a drill hole.

Apart from the fact that I don't keep router bits around that fit the shank of a #8 or #10 wood screw, on some occasions I have to use flat-head screws. The solution to this problem is to chuck up a countersink in the router, but setting the stops is a pain.

In most cases, I use round-head screws, drill two holes, and cut out the waste between with a coping saw, then take the piece back to the drill press and run it back and forth along the sides of the drill bit. Maybe on occasion I'll touch that up with a file.

How does Neptune cut his elongated screw holes?

—Robert Braczyk, New York, N.Y.

**WILL NEPTUNE REPLIES:** "Sloppy" screws are a quick and effective way to connect parts and allow for seasonal movement. First, drill a regular hole and countersink it. Then, on the inner face (where the movement is), drill two more holes, angling them so that they are aimed at the bottom of the countersunk recess. Chisel away any waste left between the holes, and it's done. The goal is to have the screw head fully supported by the countersunk recess, but allow the shaft of the screw to tip back and forth in the angled slot. The slot is kept the same size

### About your safety:

Working wood is inherently dangerous. Using hand or power tools improperly or ignoring standard safety practices can lead to permanent injury or even death. Don't try to perform operations you learn about here (or elsewhere) until you're certain they are safe for you. If something about an operation doesn't feel right, don't do it. Look for another way. We want you to enjoy the craft, so please keep safety foremost in your mind whenever you're in the shop.

—Anatole Burkin, editor

as the screw shank, allowing movement in one plane while keeping things aligned in the cross direction.

## A view on editorial content

I've never written to a magazine before; however, I felt compelled to respond to Duane Yoder's letter, "A disgruntled reader" (*FWW* #163, pp. 8-10).

I'm in my early 50s and have just taken up woodworking. Your latest *Tools & Shops* issue (*FWW* #160) was of enormous help to me. Several things occurred after I read the issue. First, I realized that I would need both a jointer and planer to improve my box-making attempts. And second, your reviews allowed for making a much better-informed purchase.

People start various challenges and interests at different times of their lives. I would like to thank *FWW* for your most positive attitude in including articles that reach across the broad spectrum from the beginner to the most experienced.

—Jim Johnson, Brisbane, Queensland, Australia

## Demystifying cover lines

For all the years I have subscribed to your magazine, I have intended to write and relay my satisfaction to you for such a great magazine. I have saved them all and have many boxes of them.

In addition to the praise I have preserved for you for several years, I have a complaint that has been with me in receiving each issue you publish. But your magazine is not the only one that does this; it's rampant in most magazines.

My complaint is this: Why not title your feature items inside the magazine the same as you title them on the cover?

—Jim Norwood, Charlotte, N.C.

**EDITOR REPLIES:** The headlines we write for the inside of the magazine don't always fit in the space allotted for the cover lines (or vice versa). But you raise a valid point: Finding an article should not be a struggle. We'll try harder to make the connection between the cover lines and the articles less cryptic.

## A turner's delight

I enjoyed Andy Barnum's "Midi-lathes" (*FWW* #158, pp. 68-73) and found the



## The Taunton Press

Inspiration for hands-on living®

INDEPENDENT PUBLISHERS SINCE 1975

TAUNTON, INC.

Founders, Paul and Jan Roman

THE TAUNTON PRESS

President & CEO John Lively

Editor In Chief Sue Roman

Chief Marketing Officer Sarah Roman

Chief Financial Officer Timothy Rahr

Chief of Operations Thomas Luxeder

Publisher, Magazine Group Jon Miller

Publisher, Book Group James Childs

DIRECTORS

Creative Director Susan Edelman

Human Resources Director Carol Marotti

Technology Services Director Edward Kingston

Controller Wayne Reynolds

Marketing Director, Magazines Diana Allwein

Promotion Director Steven Turk

Fulfillment Director Patricia Williamson

TAUNTON TRADE COMPANY

Director, Kathleen Davis

TAUNTON DIRECT

President, Sarah Roman

TAUNTON NEW MEDIA

Director, Leslie Kern

THE TAUNTON STAFF

**Books:** *Marketing:* Allison Hollett, Audrey Locorotondo.

*Editorial:* Maria Taylor, Helen Albert, Peter Chapman, Robyn Doyon-Aitken, Maureen Graney, Carolyn Mandarano, Jennifer Renjilian Morris, David Palmer, Jennifer Peters, Amy Reilly, Erica Sanders-Foege, Timothy Snyder, Kathleen Williams, Marilyn Zelinsky-Syarto. *Art:* Paula Schlosser, Joanne Bisson, Nancy Boudreau, Wendi Mijal, Lynne Phillips, Carol Singer, Rosalind Wanke. *Manufacturing:* Thomas Greco, Laura Burrone.

**Business Office:** Holly Smith, Gayle Hammond, Patricia Solomon. *Legal:* Carolyn Kovalski. *Magazine Print Production:* Philip Van Kirk, Nicole Anastas.

**Distribution:** Paul Seipold, Sergio Colon, Leanne Furlong, Deborah Greene, Linnea Ingram, Andrew Lowdet, Frederick Monnes, Raymond Passaro, Alice Saxton.

**Finance/Accounting:** *Finance:* Kathy Worth, Andrea Henschcliffe, Susan Iadarola, David Pond. *Accounting:* Patrick Lamontagne, John Vaccino, Irene Arfaras, Lydia Krikorian, Elaine Yamin, Carol Diehm, Margaret Bufundo, Dorothy Blasko, Susan Burke, James Post, Lorraine Parsons, Priscilla Wakeman.

**Fulfillment:** Diane Goulart. *Client Services:* Jodi Klein, Nancy Knorr, Donna Capalbo, Renee Pagelson. *Customer Service:* Ellen Grassi, Bonnie Beardsley, Michelle Berry, Katherine Clarke, Alfred Dreher, Monica Duhancik, Margaret Hicock, Barbara Lowe, Eileen McNulty, Patricia Parks, Deana Parker, Patricia Pineau, Betty Stepney, Marylou Thompson. *Data Entry:* Melissa Dugan, Anne Champlin, Joanne Lefferts, Debra Sennefelder, Andrea Shorrock.

**Human Resources:** Linda Ballerini, Christine Lincoln, Dawn Ussety.



**Information Technology Services:** *Applications Development:* Marjorie Omalyev, Heidi Waldkirch, Carole Ando, Gabriel Dunn, Robert Nielsen, Linda Reddington, Lawrence Sullivan, Cynthia Zibelin. *Desktop and Network Support:* Kenneth Jones, Michael Colonari, Michael Lewis, Jay Ligouri, Joseph Manganello, W. Kathy Martin.

**Marketing:** Judith Baker, Dominique Clancy, Nancy Clark, Nancy Crider, Ellen Williams Kracht, Kathy Levis, Karen Lutjen, Heather Reynolds, Christine Rosato, Mary Lou von der Lancken, Alan Whitney. *Public Relations:* Jennifer Bryan, Tonya Polydoroff.

**Operations:** Joseph Morits, John Gedney, Jeannette Pascal, Dorothy Simpson, Suzanne Sylvester, Ward Willis. *T Room:* Michael Louchen, Geraldine Benno, Anna Pendergast, Norma-Jean Taylor. *Maintenance:* Susan Nerich, Alvin Jack, Jennifer Licursi, Lincoln Peters.

**Promotion:** William Brady, Mary Beth Cleary, Michele Mayernik, Sandra Motyka, William Sims, Donald Torrey. *Promotion Print Production:* Diane Flanagan, John Cavallaro, Dawn Viglione.

**Taunton Creative and Editorial:** *Creative:* Robert Goodfellow, Sarah Opdahl, Pamela Winn. *Editorial:* Jefferson Kolle. *Photography:* Scott Phillips. *Video:* Gary Junken. *Prepress:* Deborah Cooper, Richard Booth, William Bivona, David Blasko, James Chappuis, Richard Corrae, Brian Leavitt, Chansam Thammavongsa. *Advertising Production:* Laura Bergeron, John Garofalo, Steven Molnar, Patricia Petro, Kathryn Simonds, Martha Stammer.

**Taunton Direct:** Nannette Dorsey, Jeanne Todaro.

**Taunton New Media:** Jodie Delohery, Philip Allard, Christopher Casey, Mark Coleman, Ruth Dobsevege, Timothy Murphy, Jennifer Wheeler.

**Taunton Trade Company:** John Bacigalupi, Trina Bayles, Diana Mackey, Paul McGahren, Eve Pison, Elizabeth Quintiliano. *Single Copy Sales:* Mark Stiekman, Valerie Droukas.

#### TAUNTON MAGAZINES

*Fine Woodworking • Fine Homebuilding  
Threads • Fine Gardening  
Fine Cooking • Inspired House*

Our magazines are for people who are passionate about their pursuits. Written by practicing experts in the field, Taunton Press magazines provide authentic, reliable information supported by instructive and inspiring visuals.

#### TAUNTON BOOKS

Our books are filled with in-depth information and creative ideas from the finest authors in their fields. Whether you're practicing a craft or engaged in the creation of your home, Taunton books will inspire you to discover new levels of accomplishment.

#### WWW.TAUNTON.COM

Our website is a place where you can discover more about the interests you enjoy, converse with fellow enthusiasts, shop at our convenient on-line store or contact customer service.

#### EMPLOYMENT INFORMATION

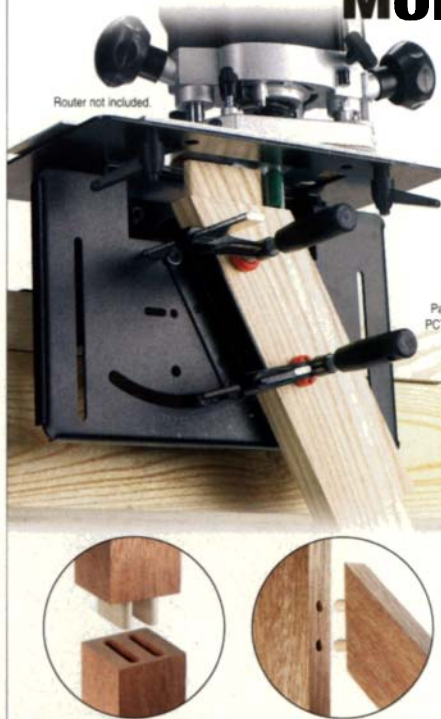
To inquire about career opportunities, please e-mail us at [tauntonjobs@taunton.com](mailto:tauntonjobs@taunton.com) or visit our website [www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com). You may also write to The Taunton Press, Human Resources, 63 S. Main St., PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470.

#### CUSTOMER SERVICE

We are here to answer any questions you might have and to help you order our magazines, books and videos. Just call us toll-free at 800-477-8727.

The Taunton Press, Inc., Taunton Direct, Inc., Taunton Trade Company, Inc., and Taunton New Media, Inc., are all subsidiaries of Taunton, Inc.

## MORTISE & TENON JIG



**Enables mortise & tenons and dowel joints to be cut with a plunge router. Ideal for cabinet, chair and table construction.**

- One set-up for both mortise and tenon giving perfectly fitting joints.
- Cuts mortise & tenon sizes of 1/4" to 5/8".
- Fully adjustable for compound angle joints up to 45°.
- Reversible templates to produce round and square end tenons.
- Templates can be used for accurate dowelling applications.
- Template guide bushes are included but router bits are required.

Worldwide  
Patent Pending  
PCT/GB02/00253



**MT/JIG FROM  
\$299.00**

#### Includes:

- 5 x Brass Template Guide Bushes (For Tenons)
- 1 x 2 1/8"Ø Template Guide Bush (For Mortise)
- 1 x 5/8"Ø Brass Template Guide Bush (For Dowelling)
- 4 x Clamps
- 1 x Set-up Bar

#### Specification:

Material thickness min. 1/2"  
Material thickness max. 2"  
Width of material max. 4"  
Tenon size min. 3/16"  
Tenon size max. 5/8"  
Angle tilt compound -10° to 45°  
+ unlimited if wood repositioned

**trend**  
routing technology

**www.trend-usa.com**  
Tel: (859) 485 2080 Fax: (859) 485-2286

### ACCURACY FOR SALE!

#### CARTER BAND SAW GUIDES

- More accurate
- Less blade friction
- A fit for all popular saws 14" and up
- Conversion Kits for most saws



Toll Free: 888-622-7837

**Carter PRODUCTS CO. INC.**  
2871 Northridge Drive NW  
Grand Rapids, MI 49544  
(616) 647-3380 • FAX: (616) 647-3387  
E-mail: [sales@carterproducts.com](mailto:sales@carterproducts.com)  
Website: [www.carterproducts.com](http://www.carterproducts.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 180

### The Dogwood Institute

#### School of Fine Woodworking

- New Premier School in Atlanta, GA Area
- Beginner / Intermediate / Advanced Classes
- Hands on Instruction for all Techniques
- Classes Concentrate on Building Fine Furniture



For complete course schedule and detail information  
1-800-533-2440 • 770-751-9571 (in Georgia)  
[www.dogwoodwoodworking.com](http://www.dogwoodwoodworking.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 175

## OMER

### PR.28

Invisible, 23 Gauge  
Headless Pinner

Shoots up to 1 1/8"

\$279 US



### PRECISION TOOLS since 1971

### MG.40

21 Gauge Headless  
Pinner & Brad Nailer

Shoots up to 1 9/16"

\$279 US



**OMER**  
Direct

3605 Commercial St. Vancouver, BC  
Tel. 604.876.9909 Fax. 604.876.3914  
[www.omer-tools.com](http://www.omer-tools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 139

# Letters (continued)

comparison to be very helpful. Recently, I bought a Nova Mercury midi-lathe based on that article—a beautiful machine even though the lathe with bed extension apparently amounted to only 20 in. between centers.

However, it may be of interest to your readers that additional 12-in. extensions can be bolted on to increase the bed length even more for long spindle turning.

—Julian Hamer, Ashland, Ore.

## A better way to remember

Gary Rogowski's article "How to Get Straight, Stable Stock" (*FWW* #165, pp. 32-37) covers a subject that I have struggled with on many an occasion. In the article, Rogowski talked about his FEE system (Faces, Edges, and Ends) for the proper sequence during final milling.

I mounted a sign on the wall near my planer with FEE written boldly. When I went to use the acronym, I found that I had forgotten which E stood for Edges and which E stood for Ends. Short-term memory loss is something I sadly suffer from; just ask my wife.

I solved the problem by changing the last E to an N. Instead of FEE, my sign soon read FEN, which of course stands for Faces, Edges, and Ns (eNdS): Now that I can remember.

—John H. DeRosa, West Dundee, Ill.

## Removing glue squeeze-out

I found Jeff Jewitt's Rules of Thumb, "No-mess glue-ups" (*FWW* #165, pp. 86-90), quite interesting. I would like to add one tip that I have found useful when removing glue squeeze-out.

Instead of using a toothbrush like Jewitt suggests, I use a 2-in.- to 3-in.-wide flagged end brush with artificial bristles. First dip the brush in a pail of water, then shake off the excess. Remove the glue while it is wet, and rinse and shake off the brush frequently during

the process. The flagged ends will get into sharp corners and down into the grain without leaving behind much water.

Be sure to use a good-size bucket of water, and change it often to avoid making a glue wash. This process has eliminated glue stains for me.

—Robert Geers, Cedar Key, Fla.

## Demise of the old ways

I was fortunate enough to attend an engineering high school that required two years of woodworking shop. Some of our shop work occasionally would be interrupted by a crusty old instructor storming out of his office to berate a student who left a plane blade down on the bench, a chisel bevel up, or was storing away a file without wire-brushing the teeth clean.

It seems to me that at least one of these shop rules is now ignored routinely. In the October 2003 issue (*FWW* #165), I see two planes on the front cover that are blade down, as well as other instances on pp. 30 and 56.

Have many folks forgotten that a blade dulled by any reason requires time to sharpen it, or is this just one more old shop tradition that is dying out?

—Wallace C. Knapp, Ellicott City, Md.

**EDITOR REPLIES:** Okay, I'll take the bait.

Ask two or more woodworkers, and you'll get into an argument on this subject. As for me, I have found that a plane lying on its side is a waiting target for other tools (or bare skin) to bump into the exposed iron. When sole-side down on a clean piece of wood, whether bench or workpiece, a plane iron is protected—unless you inadvertently lay it down on another tool or piece of hardware. I keep my bench uncluttered when planing for that very reason. But do what works best for you.

## Clarification

A few dimensions were omitted from the article "Chair Making Simplified" by Garrett Hack (*FWW* #166, pp. 80-87). The lengths of the seat rails are as follows, measured from outside shoulder to outside shoulder, along the top edge: front rail, 15 $\frac{3}{8}$  in.; side rails, 15 $\frac{3}{16}$  in.; rear rail, 11 $\frac{1}{2}$  in.



**WOODCRAFT**  
UNIVERSITY

There's a  
Woodcraft University  
location near you

<b>Alabama</b> Birmingham Area	<b>New York</b> Rochester
<b>Arizona</b> Tempe Tucson	<b>North Carolina</b> Charlotte Area Raleigh
<b>California</b> Sacramento San Francisco Bay Area Santa Rosa	<b>Ohio</b> Cincinnati Area Cleveland Area Columbus Area Dayton
<b>Colorado</b> Colorado Springs Denver	<b>Oklahoma</b> Oklahoma City Tulsa
<b>Connecticut</b> Hartford Area New Haven Area	<b>Oregon</b> Eugene Portland Area
<b>Florida</b> Casselberry Clearwater Jacksonville	<b>Pennsylvania</b> Harrisburg Philadelphia Area Pittsburgh Area
<b>Georgia</b> Atlanta Area	<b>Rhode Island</b> East Greenwich
<b>Hawaii</b> Honolulu	<b>South Carolina</b> Charleston
<b>Idaho</b> Boise	<b>Tennessee</b> Knoxville Nashville
<b>Illinois</b> Palatine Peoria	<b>Texas</b> Austin Dallas Area Fort Worth Houston San Antonio
<b>Indiana</b> Evansville Indianapolis	<b>Utah</b> Salt Lake City Area
<b>Iowa</b> West Des Moines	<b>Virginia</b> Richmond Washington D.C. Area
<b>Kansas</b> Lenexa	<b>Washington</b> Seattle
<b>Kentucky</b> Louisville	<b>West Virginia</b> Parkersburg
<b>Maryland</b> Towson	<b>Wisconsin</b> Appleton/Fox Cities Area Madison Milwaukee Area
<b>Massachusetts</b> Woburn	<b>Woodworker's Club:</b>
<b>Michigan</b> Canton Sterling Heights	<b>Connecticut</b> Norwalk
<b>Minnesota</b> Bloomington	<b>Maryland</b> Rockville
<b>Missouri</b> St. Louis Area	
<b>New Hampshire</b> Portsmouth Area	
<b>New Mexico</b> Albuquerque	

**WOODCRAFT**<sup>®</sup>

For your local woodcraft store,  
visit [www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com),  
or for a free catalog, call  
800 542-9115

Dept.03TS12BE

### Writing an article

*Fine Woodworking* is a reader-written magazine. We welcome proposals, manuscripts, photographs, and ideas from our readers, amateur or professional. We'll acknowledge all submissions and return those we can't publish. Send your contributions to *Fine Woodworking*, PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

*what can take your passion and turn it into perfection?*



**WOODCRAFT**<sup>®</sup>  
UNIVERSITY

**T**here's nothing better than hands-on learning with a highly skilled mentor to really enhance your woodworking craft. For years, Woodcraft has brought you the finest class instruction, woodworking books, and videos - now we're introducing the most complete woodworking tool of all - Woodcraft University.

Each of the University Colleges - Turning, Carving, Sharpening, Joinery, Router, Power Tools, and Finishing can help turn your woodworking passion into perfection. No matter what your skill level, in Woodcraft University classes, you'll learn turning with master turners, sharpening with experts, power tool techniques from recognized artisans, and much more.

Start with 100 Level Turning Classes - Beginning Lathe, Turning A Classic Pen, or Making Wooden Spoons, then move up to intermediate or advanced skill level classes. Woodcraft University offers you more opportunities to learn in classes certified for continuing education credit.

Your local Woodcraft store or Woodworkers Club has all the class schedules and details to get you started in woodworking education from Woodcraft University.

Experience the finest in woodworking tools, power tools, and education from our catalog, online at [www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com), and at your local Woodcraft store.



**WOODCRAFT**<sup>®</sup>  
Helping You Make Wood Work<sup>®</sup>

THE ORIGINAL ORIGINAL

# CONTRACTOR DUTY SERIES

Model 3512-01, 3512-03



**Specifications**

3hp 1ph 220V  
3hp 3ph 230/460V  
12"/13" Blade Capacity  
Automatic Brake  
24" Crosscut Capacity  
Auto Return Device  
Complete Guarding,  
Table, Frame Legs

**The Original Saw Company**

465 3rd Ave. SE • P.O. Box 331

Britt, Iowa 50423

[www.originalsaw.com](http://www.originalsaw.com)

800-733-4063 • (641) 843-3868

FAX (641) 843-3869

**Call for a distributor nearest you**

READER SERVICE NO. 195

## High Transfer Efficiency.

### Wood finishing has improved with the new MSHTE stain gun.

- Even distribution of body stains, wipe stains
- Low fluid pressure 50-100 psi
- Low pressure atomization 5-20 psi
- Low particulate travel velocity
- Midsize, lightweight gun body
- HVLP Compliant



MSHTE spray gun

For a DeVilbiss Distributor near you, call...

**1-888-992-4657**

# DEVILBISS

[www.devilbiss.com](http://www.devilbiss.com)

© 2003 ITW Industrial Finishing

READER SERVICE NO. 192

## Tools That Were Just Made For Each Other!



CMT's Industrio™ Routing System is a true production router table. It includes a rugged melamine cabinet, warp-free phenolic top and our unique pivoting fence. Ask your CMT dealer for more details.

\*the orange color on tool surfaces is a registered trademark of CMT Utensili S.p.A.

### Industrio™ Routing System

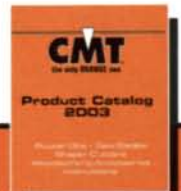
### Pocket-Pro™ Joinery System



Two great tools in their own right . . .  
. . . or put them together to make your own pocket hole workstation.

For fast, easy cabinet & furniture construction, there's nothing like the new Pocket-Pro™ Joinery System. As shown below, the Deluxe System's phenolic base is a perfect match for our router table. Or use the jig on your workbench, at the job site or anywhere you need strong, accurate joints.

Call your CMT Distributor today to learn more about these exciting tools, or contact CMT for a free, full-color catalog



Get the full story about CMT router bits, blades, cutters and more. Visit your CMT distributor today!

CMT USA, Inc. • 307-F Pomona Drive • Greensboro, NC 27407 • 888-268-2487 • [www.cmtusa.com](http://www.cmtusa.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 179

# REDEYE®

GMC has revolutionized the power tool market following the introduction of the REDEYE® range of laser guided power tools.

Available exclusively at Lowe's, the REDEYE® range includes a circular saw, jig saw, miter saws and a drill press. They each feature a laser line generator incorporated into the product to provide unparalleled accuracy and safety whilst cutting and drilling.

## Improved operator cutting vision

REDEYE® Laser Line Generator emits an intense narrow beam of pure red light to guide you as you cut. It is clearly visible and will not be obscured by sawdust.

## Faster set-up

Simply switch on the REDEYE® Laser Line Generator and you have an instant cutting guide. Start and finish jobs faster with the laser line to guide you.

## Increased accuracy

REDEYE® generates an exact straight line allowing more accurate cuts and superior finishes.

## Safer to operate

REDEYE® enhances operator safety. You can clearly see the laser line while you are standing upright, keeping your face well away from flying sawdust and wood chips.

**R13UL**  
7 1/4" Circular Saw  
13 Amp

## Other REDEYE® products

**SMS210LSRUL**  
8 1/4" Slide Compound Miter Saw  
10 Amp

**LSR13R**  
5 Speed Drill Press

**SMS250LSRUL**  
10" Slide Compound Miter Saw  
14.5 Amp

**R700UL**  
Orbital Action Jig Saw  
6 Amp

**LOWE'S**  
Improving Home Improvement®

GMC products available exclusively at Lowe's.

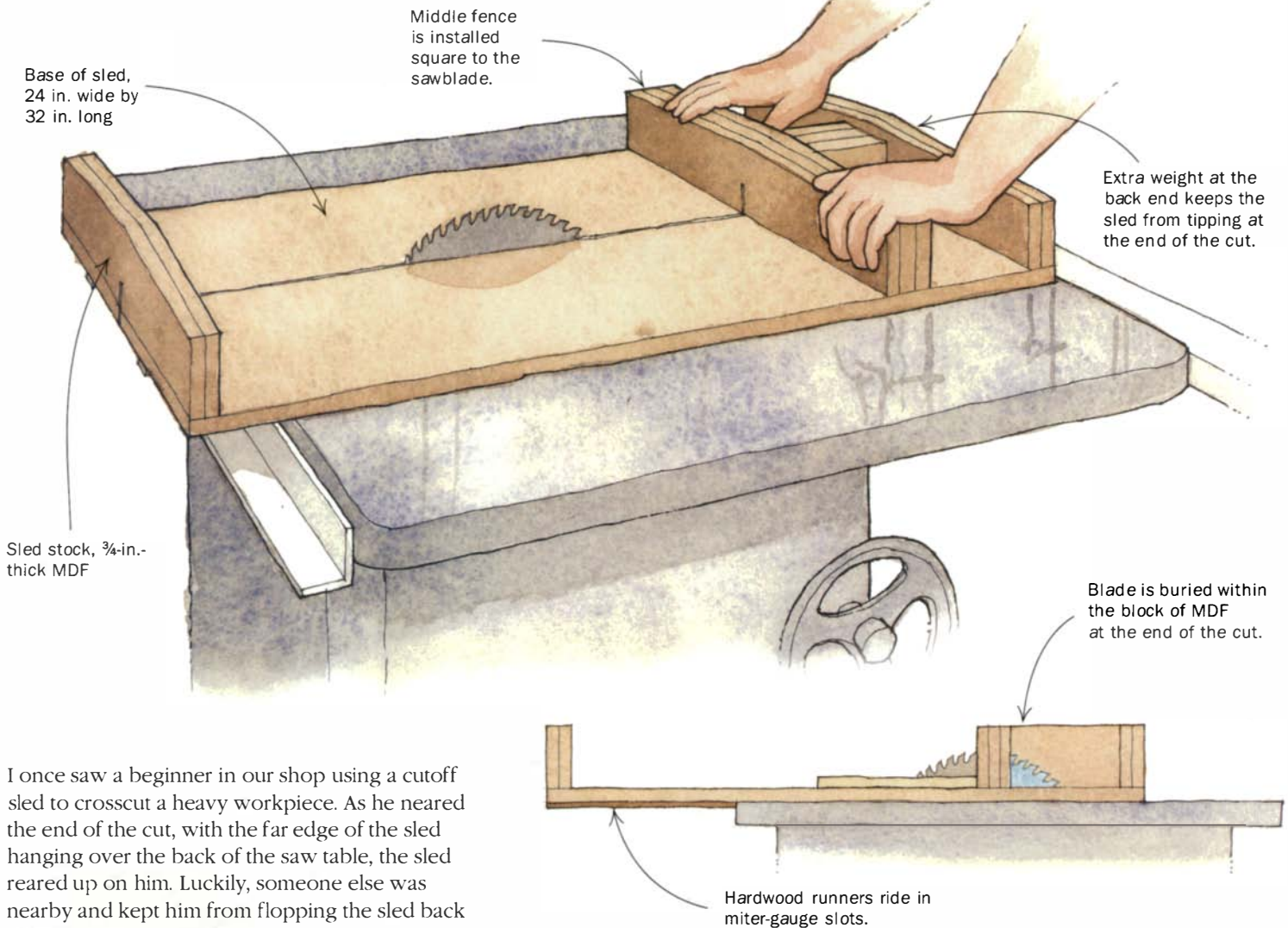
For more information about GMC power tools, please visit us at: [www.gmccompany.com](http://www.gmccompany.com) or contact us at USA Toll Free: 1-866-307-0132

**2** YEAR  
REPLACEMENT  
WARRANTY

**30** DAY  
SATISFACTION  
GUARANTEE

**GMC**  
GLOBAL MACHINERY COMPANY  
WE'LL SHOW YOU THE WAY

## A safer crosscut sled



I once saw a beginner in our shop using a cutoff sled to crosscut a heavy workpiece. As he neared the end of the cut, with the far edge of the sled hanging over the back of the saw table, the sled reared up on him. Luckily, someone else was nearby and kept him from flopping the sled back onto the table and into a spinning blade. After that, the first thing we did was to build an outfeed table for that saw. I also decided to make a new, safer crosscut sled as shown in the drawings above.

I chose to make the new sled of 3/4-in.-thick medium-density fiberboard (MDF) because it's inexpensive, it's about as hard as soft maple, and it's very stable. I milled some scraps of hardwood lumber for the runners and cut a 24-in. by 32-in. piece of MDF for the base of the sliding jig. I laminated two pieces of MDF for the front and back fences and three pieces for the middle fence.

I secured the runners with glue and screws because I didn't want to risk any possibility of them coming loose during a cutting operation. After installing the runners, I sealed and lubricated them with several coats of paste wax.

Before attaching the fences, I cut a kerf into the base of the sled to give me a reference edge to which I could square them. Last, I added a block of MDF (three pieces thick) to fit between the middle and back fences. That block of MDF makes it virtually



### A reward for the best tip

Joe Santapau was inspired to design a safer tablesaw crosscut sled after realizing the inherent dangers in typical shop-built sleds. With his sled (above), the blade is buried completely at the end of the cut. Santapau constructs high-end millwork (doors, moldings, wainscot paneling) for a living, but for fun he spends time turning small boxes on a lathe. For his winning tip, Santapau will receive a set of hand-forged chisels ([www.barrtools.com](http://www.barrtools.com)). Send your best tip, along with any photos or sketches (we'll redraw them), to Methods of Work, Fine Woodworking, PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.



# The Pro Pocket™

Full 3/4" Overlay Flipper Door Slide®

Virtually eliminates door scarring and damage

- Accommodates doors up to 42" tall and up to 30 lbs.
- Attached brackets for simple internal panel installation & removal.



**Accuride**  
www.accuride.com

READER SERVICE NO. 143

## The BLUE Mark of Quality.



### POCKET HOLE SYSTEMS™

Quality tools, education, service and value.

Expect this and more from **KREG**, the leader in Pocket Hole technology.

Kreg Jig® ProPack

#### A better way to join wood.

**Faster...** No waiting for the glue to dry.  
**Stronger...** Screws put unmatched clamp pressure on the joint line.

**Simpler...** Drill pocket holes in only one workpiece. Align for assembly with a single clamp.

**Better!** Faster assembly, stronger joints, fewer headaches. Give it a try today!

#### Two simple steps to wood joinery...



Drill pocket holes



Drive screws.

www.kregtool.com



800.447.8638

READER SERVICE NO. 30

# WANT THIS?



A clean, sharp hole every time. No chips, no splits, no errors. It takes skill and a sharp drill bit. And that takes the **Drill Doctor®** drill bit sharpener.

# GET THIS.



- Restores bits to factory sharp
- Fast and easy to use
- Sharpens most bits—even split point
- Diamond sharpening wheel
- Powerful 20,000 rpm motor
- Sturdy carrying case available

**Drill Doctor®**  
The Drill Bit Sharpener

"I have never recommended a product that was so easy to use and so effective. This is one of the best tools I've ever purchased."

—Stephen Bierhorst  
Patterson, Louisiana

Work Smart.  
Work Sharp.

www.DrillDoctor.com • 1-888-MYDRILL • Available at Sears, Home Depot, Lowe's, woodworking catalogs, on-line, and wherever fine tools are sold.

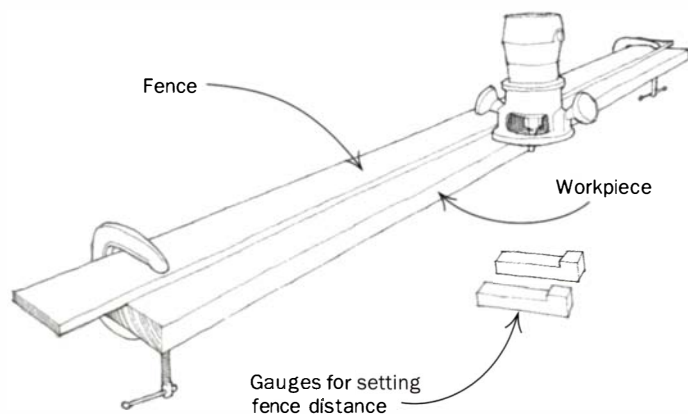
READER SERVICE NO. 193

# Methods of Work (continued)

impossible to cut your fingers at the end of a crosscut operation because the blade is completely buried within the MDF.

—Joe Santapau, Yardley, Pa.

## Edge-jointing long boards with a router

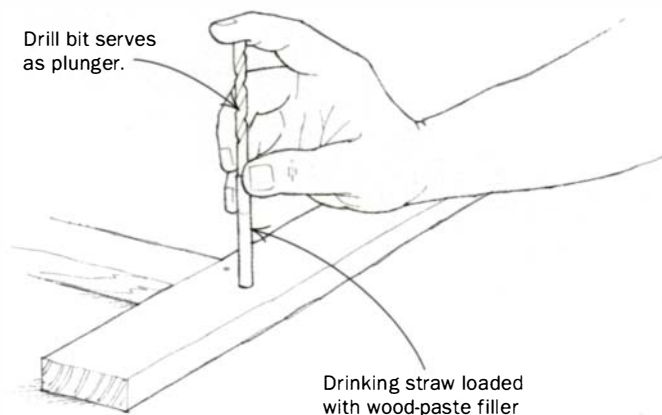


An easy way to achieve an absolutely straight, square edge on a long board is to clamp a reliable straightedge to it and cut it with a router. This works especially well for long and heavy boards, such as those you might use to glue up a tabletop.

I use a 1/2-in. straight bit in my router and have had great success with this method. The key is an absolutely straight straightedge set just the right distance from the edge so that the router takes a fine cut. To speed the setup, I made a pair of little L-shaped gauges, which let me quickly position the straightedge just the right distance from the workpiece edge. The whole procedure doesn't take much longer than using the jointer, and it is accurate.

—Tom Flader, Fond du Lac, Wis.

## Filling nail holes with a straw guide



I recently built a mantel that required a lot of finish nails. I wanted a quick and efficient way to fill the nail holes. Here's the simple solution I hit upon that works well and saves both time and filler. Start by cutting about 2 1/2 in. from an ordinary plastic drinking straw and insert the blunt end of a 1 5/8-in. drill bit (the interior diameter of the straw) into one end to act as a plunger. Dip the other end into a can of filler to force the filler into the straw.

To fill a nail hole, place the straw over the hole at 90° to the work-

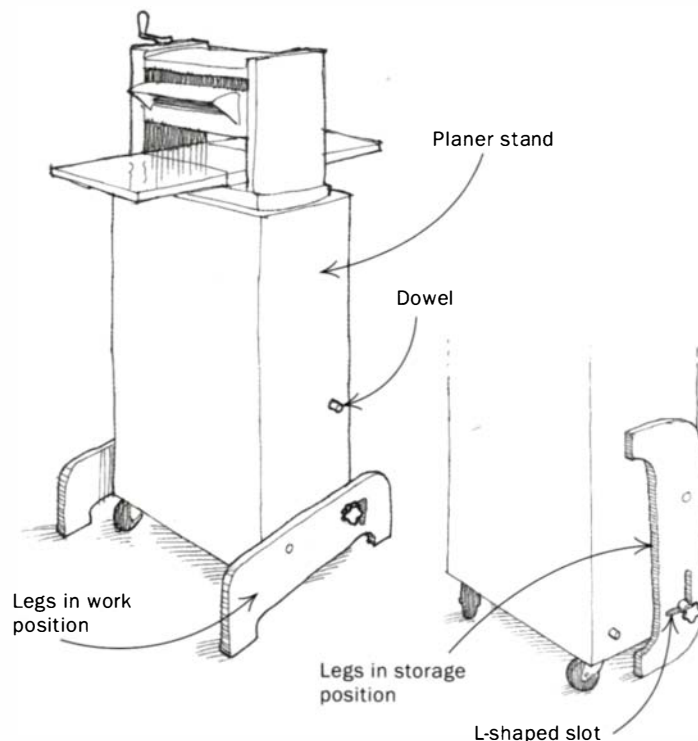
piece and push down on the drill-bit plunger as you drag the end of the straw across the hole. The result is a perfectly filled hole with no filler residue on the surface. An added bonus is that the filler stays fresh and workable in the straw, not drying out as you work, and you can fill many holes on one charge. Cleanup is a snap, and there is very little sanding to do. When the end of the straw wears out, trim it away. If the filler is too stiff, knead in enough solvent to make it soft and pliable. Also, you can cover the sharp end of the drill bit with a little duct tape to make it more comfortable.

—Jim Hardy, Pisgah Forest, N.C.

**Quick tip:** When using a drill press to rough out a mortise, the normal procedure is to clamp a fence on the drill-press table to align the holes. To further increase the accuracy of the bored holes, score a small groove down the centerline of the mortise with a marking gauge. The groove produces a center-punch effect to center the bit and keep it from wandering when the wood grain wants to steer it off center.

—Robert R. Starr, San Jose, Calif.

## A compact, stable planer stand



Because I use my planer intensively at times, I needed a stand that put the planer at a comfortable working height, wouldn't tip over during use, and was compact for easy storage. These conflicting criteria yielded a stand that, when stored, is 12 in. deep by 21 in. wide by 41 in. tall, roughly the external dimensions of the planer itself. Unfortunately, a base that stands 41 in. tall but only 12 in. deep is rather unstable when feeding 6-ft. boards through the planer. So I added folding feet (shown in the sketch above) to increase the stability.

The 24-in. by 4-in. feet are mounted on the left and right sides of the stand and can be positioned either vertically for storage or horizontally for work. With the feet in the vertical position, the planer



# More power. More torque. More jealousy on the job site.



[www.ridgid.com](http://www.ridgid.com)

Introducing a whole new line of over 30 professional-grade power tools from RIDGID® that'll seriously outperform what you're using now. These tools are packed with the features you want. Like Exactline™ laser precision. Motors that last up to five times longer. A dual-port battery charger that gets you to full power in half the time. And the best warranty in the business. Need we say more?

**RIDGID**

Powerful. Durable. Professional.



Available at The Home Depot.®

READER SERVICE NO. 148

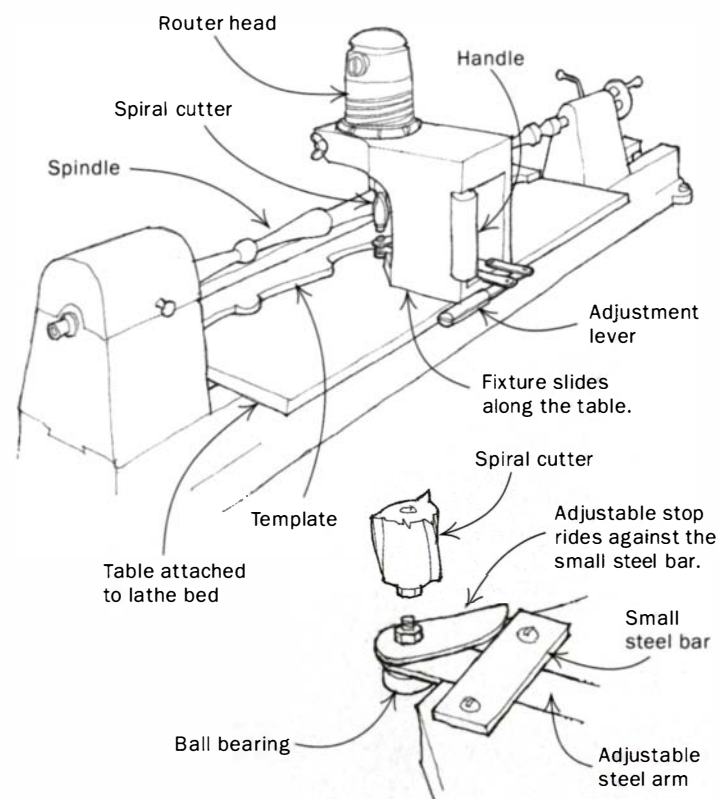
# Methods of Work (continued)

moves easily on casters. However, when the feet are lowered to the horizontal position, they raise the stand off the casters to prevent movement. They also increase the base's footprint to 23 in. by 24 in.—large enough to ensure stability during planing. Each foot is attached to the stand by a  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. carriage bolt and a plastic knob. An L-shaped groove in the foot allows me to swing the foot from one position to the other without removing the knob.

In addition to the L-groove, I drilled a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. hole in each foot that fits over one of two  $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. dowels in either the storage or the work position. Thus, moving a foot from one position to the other is simply a matter of loosening the knob and swinging the foot to the other dowel.

—Dean McWilliams, Athens, Ohio

## Router jig for duplicating spindles on the lathe



This shopmade fixture cranks out duplicate spindles quickly, accurately, and with a smooth finish. The one slight disadvantage is that the spiral cutter will not cut sharp spindle profiles such as beads. You will need to keep this in mind when designing your template, or simply add any sharp spindle profiles by hand later.

To make the fixture, first build and attach a flat table to your lathe bed. This table provides a surface on which to slide the fixture back and forth and an attachment location for the duplication template. In building the fixture, you will need to adapt the dimensions to your lathe and router. Just make sure that when the spiral cutter is mounted in the router, the bit is vertically centered, more or less, on the axis of the workpiece.

You will need to provide some bearing surface centered underneath the cutter to follow the template. I used a small ball bearing mounted on an adjustable steel arm, but ideally, the bearing should be the same diameter as the cutter. The arm adjusts in and out at

the back with a lever. An adjustable stop attached to the bearing end of the arm stops the cutting action at the desired finish radius. I also added a handle to the left side of the fixture so that I can slide it easily back and forth on the table.

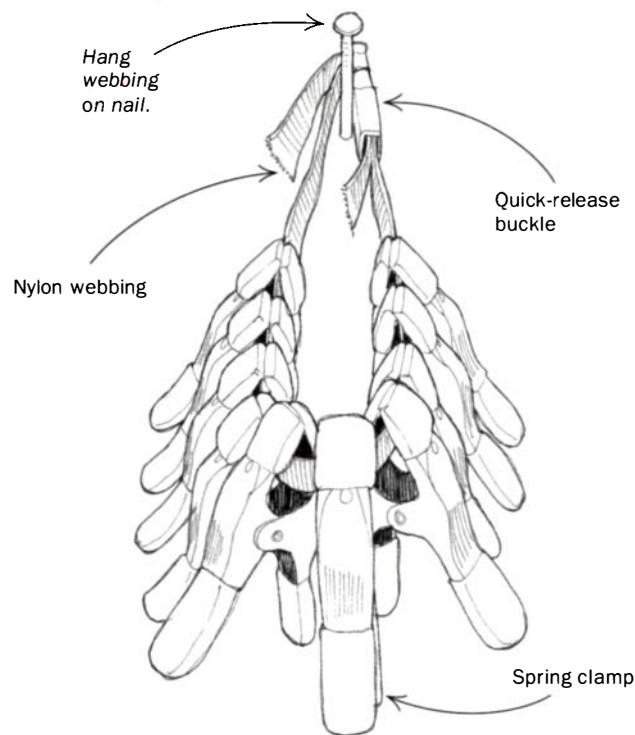
To use, I first cut the template in the desired shape and mount it to the flat table under the workpiece. Then I extend the bearing so that the spiral cutter barely touches the spindle workpiece. In a series of shallow cuts, I slide the fixture down the length of the template, increasing the depth a bit before each run. Eventually, the bearing will hit the stop to make the desired final radius on the spindle.

—Claude Graham, Jacksonville, Fla.

**Quick tip:** I line the bottom of my tool drawers with scraps of carpet. This protects both the tools and the drawers and keeps the tools from sliding around.

—Don Klimesh, Brownstown, Pa.

## Storing spring clamps



I have several dozen spring clamps, and I've struggled for years to find a simple, organized way to store and transport them between jobs. Recalling how my climbing buddies keep large amounts of gear organized and available on slings, I made a simple sling with a 2-ft. length of 1-in.-wide nylon webbing (available at most camping and climbing stores). This sling easily holds 10 of my 2-in.-capacity clamps. Keeping the same number of clamps on each sling is an easy way to quickly grab the number you need without counting. Use a narrower width of webbing for smaller clamps.

The sling makes it easy to carry a large number of clamps and to hang them over a nail or peg in my workshop or at a job site. You can tie the sling with a loose knot or use a quick-release buckle (also sold at camping stores). You can open the sling easily to dump the clamps onto a work surface, or thread them back onto the sling without having to squeeze them all.

—Philip Jacobs, Saint Paul, Minn.

## Who Raises Your Router?



Take the guess work out of your router table set-ups. Just crank it up 1/64 of an inch, or tweak it .002" at a time. From the makers of the original Rout-R-Lift and the all new Mast-R-Lift, JessEm helps get it done faster with pure accuracy. Look to JessEm for innovative solutions for those who put the "work" into woodworking!

**JessEm**  
Tool Company

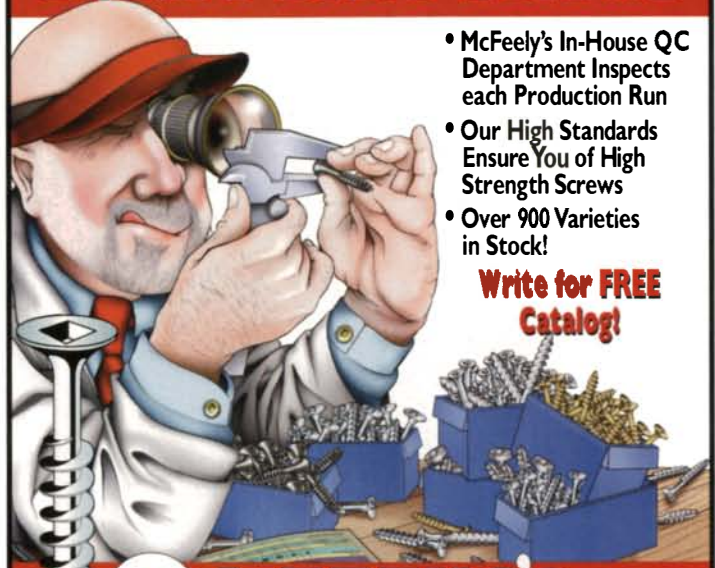
Barrie, Ontario  
Canada, North America

For additional product information call 866-272-7492 or visit us online at [www.jessem.com](http://www.jessem.com) email: [jessem@jessem.com](mailto:jessem@jessem.com)

Distributor inquiries are highly recommended

READER SERVICE NO. 220

## Top Quality Square Drive Screws



- McFeely's In-House QC Department Inspects each Production Run
- Our High Standards Ensure You of High Strength Screws
- Over 900 Varieties in Stock!

Write for **FREE** Catalog!

**McFEELY'S**  
SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS

PO Box 11169 • Dept FWWM • Lynchburg • VA • 24506  
Toll Free 1-800-443-7937 or at [www.mcfeelys.com](http://www.mcfeelys.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 33

## THE WORLD'S FINEST CHISELS

Our huge selection of Japanese chisels will take a sharper edge and hold it longer than any other chisel in the world. Period. They are available for use with the heaviest of hammers or the most delicate of cuts. Backed by over 1000



years of swordmaking tradition, our chisel makers pride themselves on making only the best. For a two year subscription to our catalog with the largest selection of Japanese woodworking tools reflecting this age old pride and tradition, send \$3.00.

### THE JAPAN WOODWORKER

1731 Clement Avenue, Dept FW  
Alameda CA 94501  
1-800-537-7820

[www.japanwoodworker.com](http://www.japanwoodworker.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 141

## The Cutting Edge

Finally, a saw you can depend on with a name you can trust. Our new MM series bandsaws feature huge resaw capacities, loads of cast iron, and perhaps most importantly... a company that will stand behind it! Call one of our customer representatives today and discover how our cutting edge bandsaws can improve your woodworking.

*Mini Max USA*

2012 Centimeter Circle Austin, TX 78758

866-WRK-WOOD

(toll free 866-975-9663)

[www.minimax-usa.com](http://www.minimax-usa.com)



Video Now Available!

READER SERVICE NO. 213

EVERY CUT. EVERY CORNER. EVERY DETAIL.  
WHEN YOU WANT TO GET IT RIGHT,  
CHOOSE YOUR TOOLS AS CAREFULLY AS THE WOOD.



**PASSION. PRECISION. PERFECTION.**

Every woodworker should feel it: A finely crafted, perfectly balanced tool becomes an extension of your hands, lifting your craft to a new level. That precision engineering is the heritage of Bosch woodworking tools – from our legendary jigsaws to our complete line of premium-quality router bits, blades, abrasives and other accessories.

When you're serious about woodworking, compromise is not an option. Find Bosch tools at retail home centers, local distributors or online at [boschtools.com](http://boschtools.com).

**BOSCH**

ROUTERS | SANDERS | JIGSAWS | MITER SAWS | PLANERS | DUST COLLECTION | ACCESSORIES

READER SERVICE NO. 166

**We Manufacture & Service**  
**SHAPER KNIVES**  
**MOULDER KNIVES**

Williams & Hussey  
 Profile Knives

We now distribute  
**FREEBORN**  
 Cutters

FOLEY BELSAW • MOULDER HEADS  
 RBI & WOODMASTER KNIVES  
 LOCK EDGE COLLARS  
 ROSETTE CUTTERS  
 CUSTOM ROUTERS &  
 CUSTOM CUTTERS

Quick Turnaround Time  
 Top Quality Products  
 at Competitive Prices

**W. Moore Profiles LTD.**  
 1 Commercial Drive,  
 P.O. Box 752, Florida, NY 10921  
 www.wmooreprofiles.com **1-800-228-8151**

Serving the Industry for over 10 Years - Fax (845) 651-1097

READER SERVICE NO. 104

**PRO-V**



**Professional Vacuum Bagging Kit**

Includes electronically controlled 5 CFM, vane type vacuum pump, 54"x109" seamless urethane vacuum bag and 10' of vacuum hose. **No compressor needed.**

**888-342-8262** **VAC-U-CLAMP**  
 www.vac-u-clamp.com

READER SERVICE NO. 63

**VIRUTEX.COM** 50 Hill St. #509 Southampton NY 11968  
 800-868-9663  
 Fx: 631-537-2396

**EDGE BANDERS**  
 PRODUCTION HOT AIR PRE-GLUED  
 PVC, VENEER, POLYESTER, MELAMINE.  
 MOTORIZED FLUSH TRIM TOP-BOT-  
 TOM & ENDS POWER BELT FEEDER  
 15 FEET / MIN. 1 MIN. HEAT UP 220  
 V.1 PHASE, 900 COLOR MATCH 1,2,3  
 MM TAPES-HDL STRIPS  
 NO COMPRESSED AIR

**EDGE BANDER DOUBLE EDGE TRIMMER END TRIMMER**  
 AG52 \$360

**EB05-\$1,950**  
**EB10-\$2,950**  
**EB10-\$3,400**  
**EB25-\$5,950** 1 MM  
**EB35-\$6,950** 3 MM & HDL

**LAMINATE-VENEER SLITTERS**  
 MOTORIZED POWER FEEDER \$1650  
 50 FEET PER MINUTE. 30" WIDE CUT. TWO  
 WHEEL CUTTERS \$18  
 NO WASTE, SAFE  
 NO NEED TO  
 USE  
 TABLE  
 SAW

**LAMINATE VENEER MITER CUTTER**  
**\$250**

**LAMINATE VENEER SLITTER**  
**\$95**

**GLUER \$120**  
 WHITE VINYL  
 4" B" ROLLER  
 3.5" UPPER  
 ROLLER

**CURVE PLANER \$360**  
 MOTORIZED  
 3" WIDE  
 18" CONVEX  
 16" CONCAVE

**18 x 3" DOOR PLANER \$350**  
 WHEEL RICE \$40

**LINE BORING FIXTURE \$35**  
 JOIN 5/8" 3/8"  
 SQUARE 5/16"  
 SQUARE

**DOOR HINGE ROUTER \$360**  
 ROUTER INCLUDED  
 NO TEMPLATES  
 NEEDED

**LOCK MORTISER \$880**  
 VACUUM PORT  
 ADVANCE  
 DESIGN

**\$480**

**EDGE LIPPING PLANER**  
 PRECISION FLUSH TRIM 2 1/4" WIDE  
 REVERSIBLE SELF INDEX CARBIDE BLADES  
 FOR PVC HARDWOOD SOLID SURFACE  
 LAMINATE 1/8" CUT RATE CONTINUOUS  
 ADJUST CUT DEPTH GOOD ON CORNERS  
 & AGAINST GRAIN 17 LBS STURDY

READER SERVICE NO. 49

**Overnight Miracles**

**Build or fix anything to last forever.**

"Well, nearly anything."

Contact us soon for product and price information.

Toll Free:  
 866-EPOXY IT (376-9948)  
 Fax: 989-671-9921  
 www.epoxyheads.com

Address:  
 P.O. Box 2280  
 Bay City, MI 48707



READER SERVICE NO. 178

**Imagination Not Included!**

Video Now Available!



What do you get when you choose a combination machine created by a company with over 50 years of experience? Endless possibilities! Our combinations put power and precision at your finger tips... at an affordable price. The editors at Fine Woodworking magazine agree. They recently named the Mini Max CU 300 Smart the best machine in its class. Call today and discover why the only limits you'll have with this machine are those of your own imagination.

Call Toll Free  
**866-WRK-WOOD**  
 (866-975-9663)

**Mini Max USA**  
 2012 Centimeter Circle, Austin TX 78758  
 www.minimax-usa.com

READER SERVICE NO. 214

## A shop in the backyard



I have been building furniture for 35 years. Along the way, it seems I acquired most every woodworking machine and hand tool imaginable. Eventually, I had a problem finding a place for them in my two-car garage. I'd long ago given up parking my car there and was beginning to have trouble finding room for my wife's car. And every time I wanted to do some woodworking, the car had to be backed out before the machines could be rolled into open spaces.

Then, one evening last summer, as my wife and I sat on our patio, it occurred to us that the backyard represented a lot of space that wasn't getting much good use, especially since our children were grown and out of the house. We decided the perfect use for the space would be the woodworking shop I'd always wanted.

### Working around zoning regulations

My first step was to check with the city zoning officials to learn if I could build such a structure in our backyard. Their answer, in short, was no. However, a specific reason for the rejection was hard to get at, so I politely began asking more questions. Eventually, after an inspector got involved and consulted a book on zoning restrictions, he concluded that an accessory building would be okay as long as it didn't have a kitchen or bath.

The inspector's okay came with some limitations. The building footprint couldn't exceed 40% of the backyard area. Also, it could not be any closer than 6 ft. to a structure or 5 ft. to the property line. The building had to have an exterior that matched our house, and it couldn't exceed 15 ft. in height.

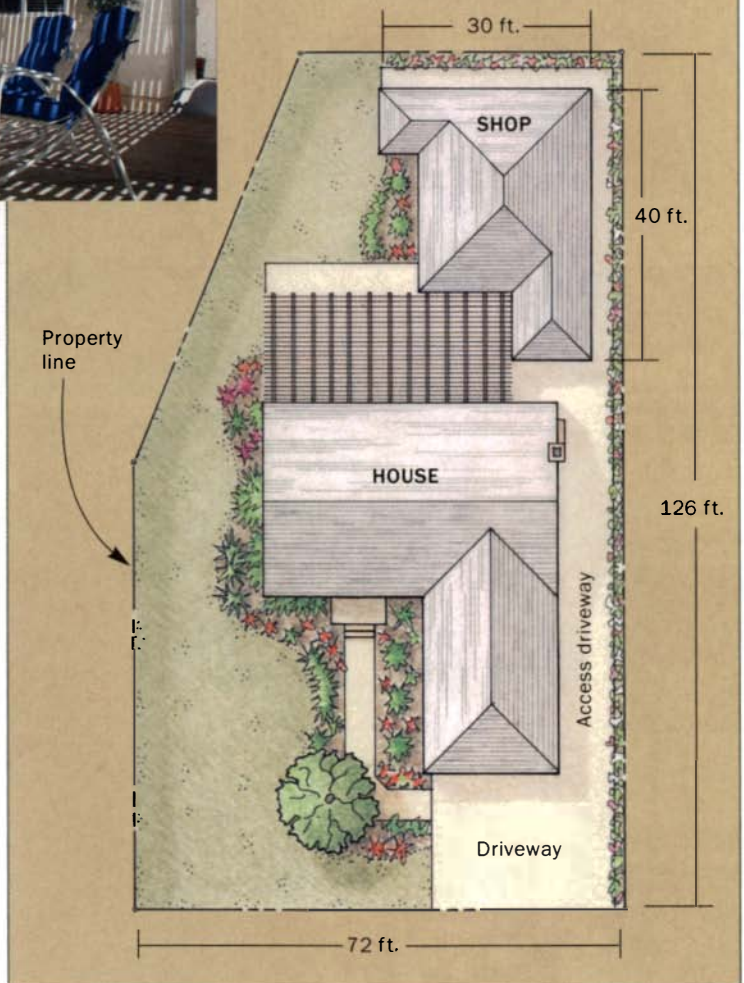
With these restrictions factored in, I determined I had room for a 940-sq.-ft. building. I then sketched a plot plan for the zoning officials to show both the house and workshop building. After their review, I had the zoning okay I needed.

### Designing the shop building

Having cleared zoning, I started designing the shop. I purchased computer-aided design (CAD) software from Punch called Home Design Architectural Series (available at many home-electronics stores). It allowed me to design the building with relative ease.

### GOOD PLANNING ENSURES THE BEST USE OF LIMITED SPACE

To conform to zoning regulations, the footprint of McCaskill's shop couldn't exceed 40% of the backyard area. The building couldn't be any closer than 6 ft. to another structure or 5 ft. to the property line, and its height could not exceed 15 ft. In addition, the building's exterior had to match that of the house.



Based on research and personal requirements, I concluded that the shop should have three rooms: one big and two small. The main shop room would have all the electrically powered machinery and tools. It also would house a long cutting bench for my radial-arm saw and miter saw. A smaller assembly room with a workbench, separate from the main room, also was important. So, too, was a small storage room to contain some of the especially noisy equipment, like the vacuum system and air compressor.

The cutting bench extends nearly the full length of a 40-ft-long wall so that I can easily crosscut long boards. To make efficient use of space, my design included storage underneath the bench. And

## Gemini Carving Duplicator

**"The Professional's  
Woodworking Secret"**

Videotape demo  
available  
Call for details



**Fast  
Rugged  
Accurate**

Allred & Associates, Inc.  
2 South Street, Auburn, NY 13021  
+1 315 252-2559 fax: 252-0502

Visit our extensive website:  
[www.wood-carver.com](http://www.wood-carver.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 92

## Quality Pen Kits and Other Turning Kits



- Designers & Manufacturers
- Wholesale & Retail

**THE BEREAHARDWOODS** CO. Inc.

Manufacturer of quality writing instruments, components and kits.

CALL FOR FREE CATALOG

6367 Eastland Rd. • Brookpark, Ohio 44142 U.S.A.  
Ph: 440-234-7949 • Fax: 440-234-7958 • [bereahard@aol.com](mailto:bereahard@aol.com)  
[www.bereahardwoods.com](http://www.bereahardwoods.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 140

## PDS-32 Portable Doweling System



Drills two holes, spaced 32mm apart. In one pass.  
Innovative design for accurate and strong joints.  
Bits and dowels available from 5mm - 12mm.  
Great for custom shops as well as installers!

**HOFFMANN**  
Please call or check our website for more info.  
Hoffmann Machine Company, Inc.  
(631) 589-6322 [www.hoffmann-usa.com](http://www.hoffmann-usa.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 99

# STANLEY

MAKE SOMETHING GREAT™

[www.stanleyworks.com](http://www.stanleyworks.com)  
**1-800-STANLEY**

READER SERVICE NO. 227



# FREE Catalog!

- Largest Selection of Professional Quality American made Router Bits
- 100's of Exciting Woodworking Accessories
- Satisfaction Guaranteed



[www.eagle-america.com](http://www.eagle-america.com)

## 1-800-872-2511

READER SERVICE NO. 52

# Holiday Special

Wood's Two Best Friends

Save over \$1000!!

Get this package for  
\$9,995... Delivered!



Video  
Now  
Available!



Make something special for this holiday season! Mini Max USA is offering an unbelievable year-end promotion. Buy our award-winning CU300 Classic Combination Machine and our heavy-duty MM16 Bandsaw together at our special price... and we'll pick up the shipping charges!\* Call our toll-free number for details.

Toll Free  
**866-WRK-WOOD**  
866-975-9663

**Mini Max USA**

2012 Centimeter Circle Austin, TX 78758  
[www.minimax-usa.com](http://www.minimax-usa.com)

\*Free shipping available for continental USA destinations only. Promotion ends December 31, 2003.

READER SERVICE NO. 215

# Shop Design (continued)

because the wall was windowless, I added a bank of cabinets above the bench.

I determined that the assembly room would work nicely just off the west end of the patio. That location allowed for a 5-ft.-wide sliding door that opens to an access driveway, making it convenient to bring wood in and finished furniture out.

The next key item was lots of power, both 115v and 220v. Because I was pulling the main power off my existing home, I had 100 amps available for the shop. That was enough to allow multiple circuits, including one for each of my heavy, power-consuming tools.



**Starting small.** A scale model, with a removable roof, provided a useful three-dimensional view of the shop plan.

To provide clearance when working with long boards or 4-ft. by 8-ft. sheet goods, I wanted a 10-ft.-high ceiling. Also, I didn't want support posts in the open area of the shop, as posts always seem to get in the way. But it took some extra planning to meet those two requirements. Indeed, I had to get some help from a structural engineer. We devised a gable-roof design using two 25-ft.-long, 8-in. by 14-in. solid-wood beams, each weighing 1,000 lb. The result is an attractive open-beam look.

With the floor plan worked out, I was ready to tackle the placement of the machines, an important step because it would define where I should place the electrical components and the drops for the air compressor and vacuum system. The CAD software made it easy to add scaled-down drawings of the machines and to move them around the floor plan until I was satisfied there was adequate access to each one.

To make sure I was correct, though, I wanted to have a 3D view of the building. So, using Foamboard, I built a scale model of the shop, including the cutting bench and machines. Looking at the model allowed me to foresee that the large beams were going to create problems with the windows, skylights, machinery placement, and sliding door. Working with the model proved to be time well spent, as it is much easier to change Foamboard than wood.

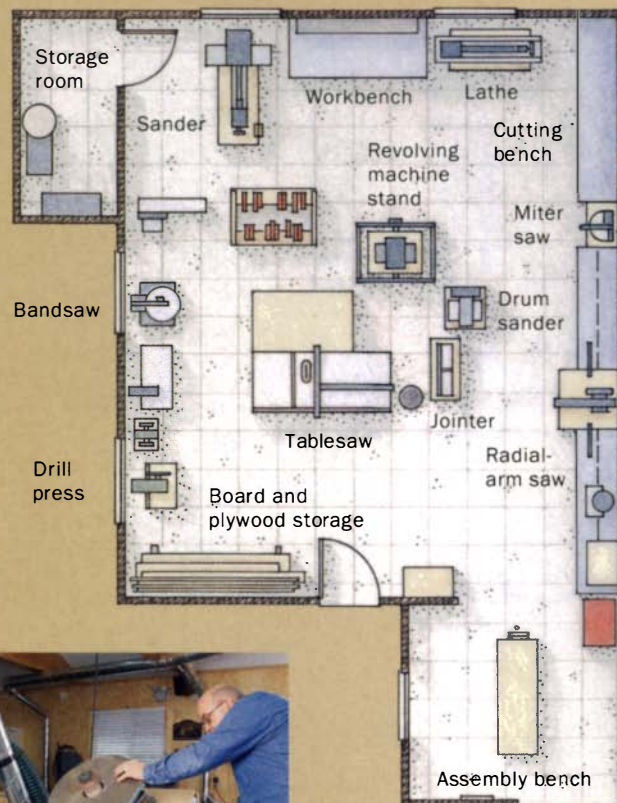
The last of the planning focused on making the shop comfortable. I wanted to have as much natural light as possible, so windows and skylights were important. I included in my design five large, energy-efficient, low-E, low-noise windows along with four skylights. I also included a 2-ton central heating and air-conditioning system, a practical addition in Southern California. Because I spend a lot of time in the shop, I also installed a 19-in. television, a DVD and VCR player, and a surround-sound speaker system.

To reduce the use of air conditioning, I planned for five ceiling fans. For additional energy efficiency and to diminish the amount of machine noise getting out into the neighborhood, I installed extra insulation—R30 value in the ceiling and R13 in the walls. Last, I decided to make the floor more comfortable by covering it with interlocking 3/8-in.-thick by 2-ft.-square rubber mats. The mats also are friendlier on dropped tools.



## A WIDE-OPEN FLOOR PLAN

Engineered beams eliminate the need for support posts that take up space and get in the way. The entire shop floor is covered with interlocking rubber mats that are easy on the feet.



**Space-saving stand.** A Sears/Craftsman revolving workstation holds three benchtop machines: a spindle sander, a benchtop planer, and a pocket-hole cutter.

For safety, I wanted all of the electrical outlets to have ground-fault circuit interrupters (GFCI). This device recognizes when current has escaped from its intended circuit and instantaneously shuts off any further current flow. And although not required by code, an overhead sprinkler system was installed to provide added peace of mind.

In addition, I included a 2-hp dust-collection system with a 1-micron filter, one that automatically activates the vacuum and



# #1 Rated Drum Sander by Independent Experts!



**FREE  
30-Day  
Trial!**

**5-Year  
Warranty**

**Prouder Than  
Ever to be  
MADE IN AMERICA!**

*Wide Belt Performance  
...at About 1/3 the Cost!*

Call today for a FREE report on why Woodmaster's Drum Sander was voted "tops" by *Fine Woodworking Magazine* vs. Performax®, Grizzly®, etc. See how a Woodmaster can cut your sanding time by up to 90%!

Now, our line of 26" and 38" drum sanders includes a new 50" model. These commercial-duty sanders fill the niche between slow hand methods and expensive wide-belt sanders...at about one third the cost. And there's no sacrifice in quality.

Call today and we'll give you the names of Woodmaster owners near you. This way, you can find out, first hand, how a Woodmaster might be just the machine you've been looking for.

**Call Today for Free Facts  
1-800-821-6651 ext. DS96**

Woodmaster Tools, Inc.  
1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept. DS96, Kansas City, MO 64120

READER SERVICE NO. 157

# Durability. Safety. Top Performance.

**State-Of-The-Art Router  
Bits... With a Lifetime  
Guarantee!**

Featuring safer Euro anti-kickback design, a unique safety gauge shank, non-stick coating, 25,000 RPM balancing, and high hook and shear angles that reduce chatter and produce cleaner cuts. The premium micro-grain carbide cutters are diamond honed to a 600 grit mirror finish and are precision ground to a tolerance of +/- .005".

**Call 800-533-9298  
for a FREE CATALOG.**



**3 PC. JOINTMAKER SET**  
LOCK MITRE, DRAWER LOCK,  
GLUE JOINT, BITS & STORAGE BOX  
**\$119<sup>95</sup>**  
#145 11 • 1/2 SHANK

# KATANA

**KATANABITS.COM** • BOX 4053 FE, RYDAL, PA 19046 • **FREE SHIPPING**  
READER SERVICE NO. 161

# Extremely Affordable/Unbelievable Quality

Discover why these European crafted machines from Rojek are fast becoming the tools of choice for America's finest woodworkers.



### PK 300V CABINET SAW

- Professional sliding table
- Scoring unit built in
- European riving knife safety
- Superior dust collection

### KPS 300 COMBINATION MACHINE

- Table saw/Shaper/Planner/Joiner/Mortiser
- Choice of sliding tables
- Professional precision & accuracy
- Ideal for small shops & basements

### MSP 310M PLANNER/ JOINTER COMBINATION

- 12" Jointer & thickness planer
- Fixed jointer tables means no flipping!!
- Reduced changeover & setup

### VDA 316 SLOT MORTISER

- Cut deep mortises with ease
- One-handed 360° operation
- 3.6HP motor & reversing switch
- Over 8" lateral travel

Let us make you a believer! Call toll-free:

**800-787-6747**

for a lifetime of  
woodworking



Exclusive Distributor  
in the United States

7901 Industry Dr., North Little Rock, AR 72117

Fax: 501-945-0312 • Website: [www.tech-mark.com](http://www.tech-mark.com)

COMBINATION MACHINES • SHAPERS • JOINTERS • PLANERS • SLIDING TABLE SAWS • SLOT MORTISERS

READER SERVICE NO. 156





**Convenient access.** An auxiliary driveway along one side of the house leads to a wide sliding door at the shop, so wood can be brought in and finished furniture can be removed with a minimum of hassle.

gates when a machine is turned on. Steel ducts eliminate any static discharge, and dust missed by the collection system is picked up by a ceiling-mounted air cleaner, also with a 1-micron filter.

### Construction went smoothly

The contractor and city officials accepted my CAD drawings, so there was no need to hire an architect, a savings of about \$5,000. I also saved about \$35,000 by doing much of the work myself. Contractors were used only to build the cement foundation, the exterior structure, and the roof; to install the heating and air conditioning; and to bring in the main power.

I had no problem doing the electrical, plumbing, and finishing work. From start to finish, the shop construction took about five and a half months. For the ceiling, I decided on drywall, painted white for added brightness. Beadboard-plywood interior walls provide a warm wood look that goes nicely with the wood beams in the cathedral. It's also a good surface for mounting cabinets and hanging tools.

Sticking to my original budget was tough, but I managed to keep it close. The total construction cost of the shop was about \$83,000, less the tools, benches, and cabinets that I moved from the garage. A not-so-small side benefit: My wife and I now have plenty of room to park both of our cars in the garage. □

## THE STANDARD IN SANDERS

Clayton Spindle Sanders are built in the USA with precision balanced spindles, oversized bearings, and a premium Baldor Induction Motor.

- Benchtop and full-sized, professional models
- Large table surface
- Built-in dust port
- Quick-change drums

Clayton tackles the toughest sanding jobs...smoothly.

FREE COLOR CATALOG, call: 1-800-971-5050

### CLAYTON Spindle Sanders

ROYAL OAK, MI 48068-0520  
READER SERVICE NO. 36

### MAKE YOUR SHAPER AND MOULDER KNIVES

with the new **VIEL PROFILE COPYING GRINDING MACHINE**

**VHS VIDEO \$995** (credited against machine purchase)

- Grinds knives directly in the toolholder
- Makes distortion-free profiles

**\$699.00 Only**

CALL 1-800-915-2601

### VIEL TOOLS INC.

P.O. BOX 660, MADAWASKA, ME. 04756-0660  
READER SERVICE NO. 146

### SUPERSHOP 10-IN-1 WOOD & METAL SHOP

## Own a Complete, PRO-QUALITY WOOD SHOP In Just 12 SQUARE FEET!

**HIGH QUALITY, AFFORDABLE ALTERNATIVE for TIGHT SPACE wood shops!**

- Equal or BETTER QUALITY than one-function equipment...costs less, too!
- 10 most-used tools in 1: table saw, lathe, drill press, more!
- 2-1/2 times MORE MASSIVE than other combo machines.
- 30-Day RISK FREE Trial & Industry-Leading Warranties.

**CALL TOLL FREE 1-800-476-4849**

READER SERVICE NO. 26

## General Millennium Addition

10" Table Saw

Call for Price and Availability

**FREE**  
Table, Board, Leg Set & Carbide Blade

### More General Machinery

- 15" Band Saw (#490-1) 1HP
- 12" Lathe (#160-2) 1HP
- 12" HD Lathe (#260-VD)
- 8" Jointer (#480-1)
- 6" Jointer (#1180-1) 1HP
- 15" Drill Press (#34-01)
- 14" Planer (#130-1) 3HP
- 20" HD Lathe (#26020-VD)

**THE FINE TOOL Woodsmith Store**  
2025 Beaver Avenue, Des Moines, IA 50310  
**1-800-835-5084**  
www.WoodsmithStore.com

READER SERVICE NO. 107



when the going gets  
**tough...**

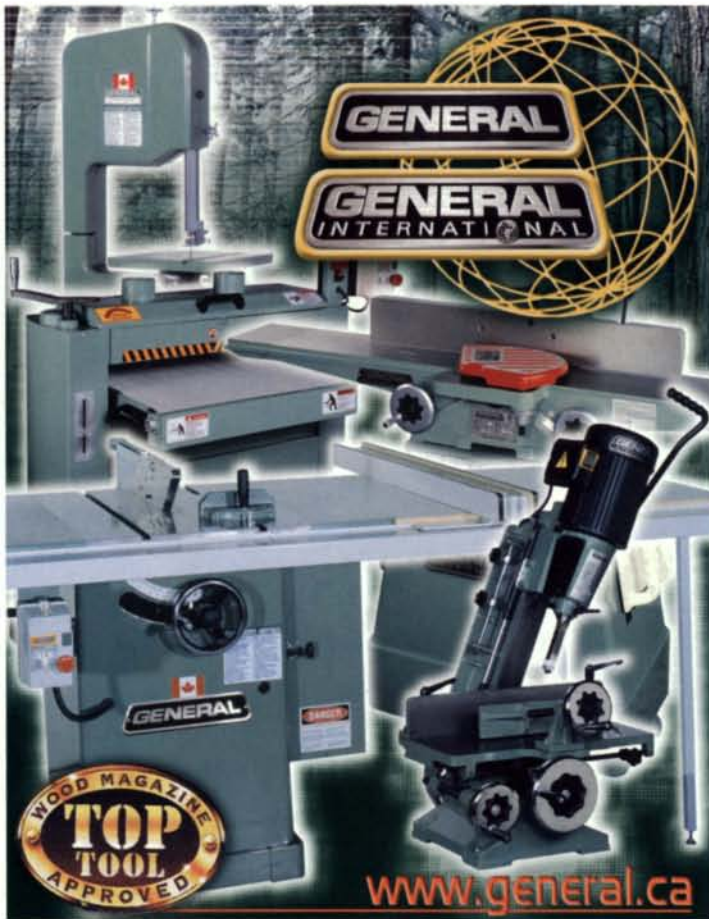
...the tough get Panasonic professional cordless tools. Our 3.5Ah Ni-MH battery pack offers the highest capacity available. Team that up with 18 volts of power and you get 165 1-3/8" holes into a 2" x 4" per charge. Our new Drill & Driver—built tough, designed for long run time, comfortable to use.



Check out our full range of cordless tools @ [panasonic.com/cordlesstools](http://panasonic.com/cordlesstools) or call 1-800-338-0552.

**Panasonic ideas for life**

READER SERVICE NO. 17



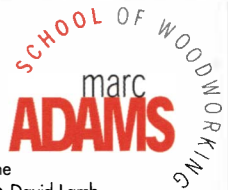
READER SERVICE NO. 209

**HANDS-ON COURSES:**

- Cabinet Making • Carving • Chair Making • Design
- Finishing • Furniture Making • Joinery • Turning
- Veneering & Marquetry and MUCH MORE!

**INSTRUCTORS INCLUDE:**

- Chris Becksvort • David Charlesworth • Graham Blackburn
- Allan Breed • Michael Cullen • Bob Flexner • Michael Fortune
- Mack Headley • Michael Hosaluk • Jeff Jewitt • Alan Lacer • David Lamb
- Grit Laskin • Thomas Lie-Nielsen • David Marks • Stephen Proctor • Andy Rae
- Mario Rodriguez • Paul Schurch • Del Stubbs and many, many more!



[www.marcadams.com](http://www.marcadams.com)

Courses run April thru October,  
Week Long and Weekend Workshops

MASW  
5504 E, 500 N,  
Franklin, IN 46131

Lodging is available nearby.

1-317-535-4013  
FAX 317-535-1713

Call to find out more about our Masters and Apprenticeship Programs!  
Scholarships Available

READER SERVICE NO. 126



READER SERVICE NO. 219

Furniture • Cabinetry • Flooring • Stairs • Handrails • Window & Door Frames • Woodcraft

**BUILD YOUR BEST WITH THE NEW MILLER DOWEL**

Miller® Dowels are currently offered in multiple sizes and are intended for use with a corresponding TruFit Drill Bit. Available in Birch, Cherry, Red Oak and Black Walnut.

**SUPERIOR FASTENERS FOR SOLID WOOD JOINERY**

- **SIMPLE** – fast and easy to use
- **STRONG** – solid, longer-lasting joints
- **ECONOMICAL** – minimal tools required
- **VERSATILE** – use in any woodworking project
- **UNIQUE** – the only natural fastener designed for insertion from the outside
- **EXCELLENT RESULTS** – an appealing and durable alternative to metal fasteners

1 DRILL STEPPED PILOT HOLE

2 ADD GLUE & INSERT

3 TAP & FINISH

1-866-WOODPEG [www.millerdowel.com](http://www.millerdowel.com)

U.S. Patent No. 6,267,527 U.S. Patent No. 6,454,700 TM 2001 Miller is a trademark of the Miller Dowel Company.

READER SERVICE NO. 76

**BENCH DOG TOOLS**

*For the serious woodworker and professional.*

The best built. Period.

**ProLift™**

**Router Adjustment System (model PL1002)**  
Perfect for Porter-Cable 7518, 7519 routers and 4.2" diameter fixed base router motors (except plunge routers). Fits 3.5" dia. and smaller fixed base motors with adapters. Cast iron plate and housing. Change and adjust bits from above the table. Zero up/down backlash.

**MADE IN USA**

**ProTop COMPLETE (model FTB400)**

Looking for it all? Then the FTB400 is for you. **ProTop Complete** includes our best-selling **ProTop Standard** router table, 36" **ProFence**, and **ProTop Cabinet**. (Shown with optional Feather-Loc featherboards, Power-Loc remote power switch, Drawer Bank, and Cab-Loc mobile leveling system.)

**FREE CATALOG!**  
Mention Code FW9

[benchdog.com](http://benchdog.com) **To Order Call 800.786.8902**

READER SERVICE NO. 12

# Forrest Blades

## Quality Blades for America's Craftsmen

Serious woodworkers demand perfection. That's why so many of them choose Forrest saw blades.

Forrest quality is legendary. Our proprietary manufacturing process, hand straightening, and unique grade of C-4 micrograin carbide give you smooth, quiet cuts without splintering, scratching, or tearouts. In fact, independent tests rate our blades as #1 for rip cuts and crosscuts.

Forrest saw blades are simply the best that money can buy. They're made in the USA by the same family-owned business that's been producing and sharpening them for over 55 years. And they're backed by a 30-day money back guarantee. It's no wonder that serious woodworkers give them such high praise!

*"Your blades are without question the best by miles, and I have tried them all."*  
Bob Jensen—Fridley, MN

*"These are the finest blades I have ever owned and you should be proud of your quality product."*  
Patrick T. Hankard—South Windsor, CT

*"[Forrest blades] cut true, with no vibration. I was a carpenter by trade for over 60 years and continue to be an active woodworker. So, I can say with confidence that Forrest blades are the best."*  
Carl Stude—Burbank, CA

The message is clear. If you're looking for quality, performance, and value, it pays to choose Forrest blades every time.

## Our Most Popular Blades:



**Woodworker II** – This award-winning, all purpose blade is the finest of its type. It turns big jobs into easy-to-handle ones.



**Dado-King** – The world's finest multi-tooth dado set. It works effectively in all directions—with the grain or across it.



**Chop Master** – Produces perfect miters every time—with no bottom splinters. You get smooth edges on all types of wood.



**Woodworker I** – Great for table and radial saws. It trims and crosscuts all woods up to 2" and is ideal for plywood.



**Duraline Hi A/T** – Our best blade for birch and oak ply veneers. It also delivers a clean cut on melamine and vinyl over particle board.

Forrest blades come in a wide variety of sizes and are available for practically every application. Call or send for our complete list of products.

## Three Convenient Ways To Order

We back our blades with a 30-day money back guarantee. So, choose the method most convenient for you and order today:

- Visit one of our fine-quality dealers or retailers.
- Call us toll free at 1-800-733-7111. (In NJ, 973-473-5236) Ask about special discounts, free shipping on orders over \$275, and discounts for blade sharpening.
- Contact our internet store: [www.stores.yahoo.com/forrestman](http://www.stores.yahoo.com/forrestman)

# FORREST

The First Choice of Serious Woodworkers Since 1946

© 2003 Forrest Manufacturing

Code FW

# Tools & Materials

## Battery-powered nailers

Every now and then, someone designs a tool that forever changes the way we look at all other similar tools. Senco has done just that with its new AirFree series of power nailers. No need for a compressor, air line, or gas cartridge—all of the required energy comes courtesy of a single rechargeable battery.

Senco's AirFree 25 handles 18-ga. brad nails up to 2 in. long, while the AirFree 41 drives 15-ga. finish nails in sizes up to 2½ in. long.

A small electric motor provides all the nail-driving power that's needed. It takes no more than a second or so for the nailer to power up for single shots. For continuous nailing, nails can be fired less than a second apart.

A fully charged battery typically can drive more than 500 nails, although the exact number is going to vary based on the nail size and the material being joined. When the battery charge gets low, the motor won't power up fast enough to trigger the plunger. That's a plus because it practically eliminates partially driven nails. The batteries on both AirFree models recharge in less than an hour.

In my tests, each tool was equipped with the largest nails they accept. Then I drove the nails into hardwood, setting them just below the surface. Both nailers worked well, showing plenty of power. Occasionally, I'd get an unset nail, but no more frequently than with my air-powered nailers.

The safety bar on the brad nailer is a bit large and awkward for nailing small trim. I either couldn't get the brad placed far enough into small coves, or the bar would slip off small half-rounds, resulting in misplaced or misfired brads.



**SENCO AIRFREE 41**  
Nails: 15-ga. finish  
Battery: 14.4v  
Price: About \$335

**SENCO AIRFREE 25**  
Nails: 18-ga. brads  
Battery: 12v  
Price: About \$290



## Shim-free slot cutter from Amana Tool

A new slot-cutting router bit from Amana, called the E-Z Dial, makes it easy to adjust the width of a slot cut. Changing the width is just a matter of turning a built-in dial and then tightening a locking nut. It would be especially useful for those who struggle to get a snug fit when using plywood that's less than full thickness.

The carbide-tipped bit is available in two size ranges: ⅛ in. to ¼ in. thick and ¼ in. to ½ in. thick. Turning the dial lets you adjust the slot to any size between the upper and lower ranges. Both bits cut a ½-in.-deep slot, although a shallower depth can be had simply by repositioning the router-table fence.

With a ⅛-in. to ¼-in. bit set up in a router table, I made several full-depth cuts in some hard-maple stock. The cuts were made on both edge and end grain at several widths, with adjustments made between each cut. The cuts looked smooth, with no noticeable

**Variable slot-width.** A new slot cutter from Amana, available in two sizes, lets you easily fine-tune the width of the slot.



**No hose necessary.** Senco's two new battery-powered nailers eliminate the need for a compressor, air line, or gas cartridge—and both worked remarkably well.

A depth-of-drive control is located conveniently on the back side of the motor housing, making it quick and intuitively easy to adjust the nailset depth. The only complaint I have about the device is that the drive-control knob is almost too easy to adjust: I found myself inadvertently changing the depth of set by moving it with the back of my hand when working in tight corners. A few protruding nails in hard-to-reach spots makes one careful not to massage the control again.

Since the arrival of these nailers, my compressed-air nailers are gathering dust. Now, if only Senco could use this technology to make a small, airless pin nailer, I'd be in nailer Nirvana.

For more information, contact Senco at 800-543-4596 or visit the company's Web site at [www.senco.com](http://www.senco.com).

—Roland Johnson is a furniture maker in Sauk Rapids, Minn.

chipout or tearing of the wood. Dialing in a wider or narrower cut required little fussing.

Each cutter sells for about \$100. For more information, contact Amana at 800-445-0077 ([www.amanatool.com](http://www.amanatool.com)).

—Tom Begnal is an associate editor.



**Dial-a-slot.** Turning a dial on the bit allows for adjustments in width as small as 0.004 in.

## Trade shows spotlight the latest tools

Two big woodworking trade shows were held once again this past summer. In Anaheim, Calif., at the Anaheim Convention Center, the biannual Association of Woodworking & Furnishings Suppliers (AWFS) Fair ran for four days. Less than a week later, in Chicago, McCormick Place opened its doors for three days to host the National Hardware Show.

With more than 800 exhibitors filling some 400,000 sq. ft. of floor space, the AWFS show attracted more than 20,000 attendees. The National Hardware Show took up 475,000 sq. ft. inside McCormick Place and drew more than 27,500 attendees. Not surprisingly, at both shows few topics were more widely discussed than good choices for comfortable shoes.

Many manufacturers use these shows to introduce new tools. This year was no different. Here's a quick summary of what I saw. Look for several of these tools to get hands-on testing in future issues of *Fine Woodworking*.

### New router from Porter-Cable

Routers keep getting better at adapting to router tables, as evidenced by this new addition to the Porter-Cable line. Model 890 has a fixed base with a 2¼-hp, soft-start, variable-speed motor. An electronic-feedback system maintains speed, even when the bit suddenly has to work harder, as when cutting through a knot.

The 890 has several worthwhile features, some of them unique to this router. For starters, when in a router table, the motor can be locked to the base—or unlocked—from above the table using a standard ⅜-in. hex socket or an accessory socket wrench available from Porter-Cable. That same wrench lets you adjust the height of the bit and fine-tune the setting. To access the router with the wrench, though, a hole must be drilled in the table.

A couple of good things happen when the router collet is fully raised. First, the collet nut extends well above the table, so it can be grabbed easily with a collet wrench to provide for above-the-table bit changes. And second, the collet automatically locks in place, so it takes just one wrench to make the change. Also, when fully raised, the switch automatically locks in the off position to prevent the motor from inadvertently starting while the collet is locked.

Porter-Cable also has created two other bases that accept the 890 motor: an open-grip D-handle base, which includes a dust port, and a plunge base. Switching the motor from one base to another is just a matter of unlocking it, slipping it into the new base, and then relocking it. The 890 sells for about \$200. Several combination kits that match the motor to one or



## Woodjoy standard scraper

With its long maple handle, the Woodjoy standard scraper is comfortable to use. A brass insert firmly secures the A2-steel blade in place and also serves as the sole of the scraper. I was impressed with the transparent shavings and fine finish the scraper produced. Anyone in need of a high-quality scraper will find this one, priced at \$50, to be a good value. For more information, contact Woodjoy at 508-669-5245 ([www.woodjoytools.com](http://www.woodjoytools.com)).

—Chris Gochnour is a furniture maker in Murray, Utah.



**Smooth surfaces on curved work.** The new standard scraper from Woodjoy will appeal to those who demand a blemish-free finish on sculpted or contoured work.

## Tormek now offers a universal support that's micro-adjustable

I've used a Tormek sharpening system for years. The machine is a slow-turning water wheel that is available with a variety of attachments for sharpening just about anything under the sun. All of the attachments mount on a universal support rod, which is raised or lowered to adjust the sharpening angle. The Tormek system now features a universal support rod with a micro-adjust feature, which allows for quick and precise height adjustments. It worked well and proved to be an improvement to an already nice machine.

The new support rod is standard on all new machines, but owners of earlier machines can purchase the support for about \$30.

For more information, go to [www.tormek.com](http://www.tormek.com).

—Mike Pekovich is the art director.



**Micromanagement.** Setting the height of the support rod on the Tormek is easier thanks to a new micro-adjust feature.

## Trade shows (continued)

more bases also are available. For more information, call Porter-Cable at 800-487-8665, or log onto [www.porter-cable.com](http://www.porter-cable.com).

### Laguna 14-in. bandsaw has 12-in. resaw capacity

Other 14-in. bandsaws require the addition of a riser block to resaw 12-in.-wide boards. Laguna's new LT14SE, a stretched-out version of its LT14 saw, comes from the factory with that capacity, so a riser block isn't needed. It also has a 2-hp, 220v motor and ceramic guides, and it accepts blades from 1/8 in. to 1 in. wide.

Unlike most other 14-in. bandsaws that have the trunnions and trunnion support made from die-cast aluminum, the Laguna's are cast iron. As a result, the table is less likely to flex when cutting a heavy board.

The LT14SE sells for about \$1,095. For more details, contact Laguna at 800-234-1976 ([www.lagunatools.com](http://www.lagunatools.com)).

### Felder upgrades 700 Series combination machines

Felder has made some noteworthy upgrades to its CF731 and CF741 combination machines: The machines have a better sliding table and, for the first time, they accept a special dado cutter.

The sliding table, new to the 700 Series, is the same system used on the pricier 900 Series sliding tablesaw. With larger bearings arranged in an "X" pattern, the weight of the table is better distributed on the ways, according to Felder.

The ability to accept the cutter—Felder calls it a slot cutter—is a standard feature on all Felder machines equipped with the "professional package" (including stand-alone tablesaws). It's an option on all other models. The 9-in.-dia. slot cutter essentially is a molding head with four reversible insert cutters.

Prices start at about \$11,000 for the standard CF731 and \$13,500 for the standard CF741. For more information, contact Felder USA East at 866-792-5288 or Felder USA West at 800-572-0061 ([www.felderusa.com](http://www.felderusa.com)).

### Shimless stacked dado from Freud

Freud's SD608 Dial-A-Width Stacked Dado Set adjusts to make cuts of various widths without the need for shims. And it can cut dadoses from 1/4 in. to 29/32 in. wide.

All it takes to change the cutting width is a quick turn of a dial. Each mark on the dial represents 0.004 in. And adjustments can be made while the dado cutter is in the saw. According to Freud,





# Choose Lamello

## The Best Joiners!

- Cutter height adjustable in 0.004" steps.
- Absolute parallel attachment.
- The professional's choice is tops for accuracy, safety, flexibility and comfort.

## The Best Biscuits!

Look for the Lamello name on your biscuits.



Top 20S

- .0013% defect rate. . . **Never throw another biscuit out!**
- Flat cross ribs for easy insertion.
- Gridded surface for uniform glue spreading.



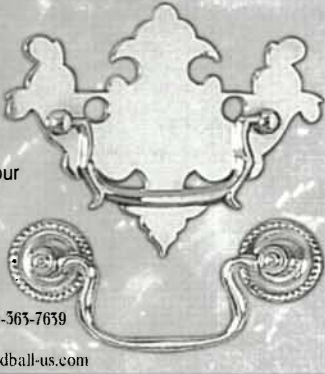
Purchase online at  
[www.csaw.com](http://www.csaw.com)  
or call 1-800-252-6355!



READER SERVICE NO. 48

## Finest Quality Reproduction Brass and Iron Hardware

Since 1932, BALL AND BALL has been manufacturing the finest quality antique reproduction furniture hardware, builders hardware, lighting fixtures, and fireplace accessories available. Call for our 108-page catalog, available for \$7.00 (catalog cost refunded on first order).



Ball and Ball  
463 W. Lincoln Highway  
Exton, PA 19341  
Phone: 610-363-7530 • Fax: 610-363-7639  
Orders: 1-800-257-3711  
Visit our website - [www.ballandball-us.com](http://www.ballandball-us.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 10

## TENRYU PRO SERIES

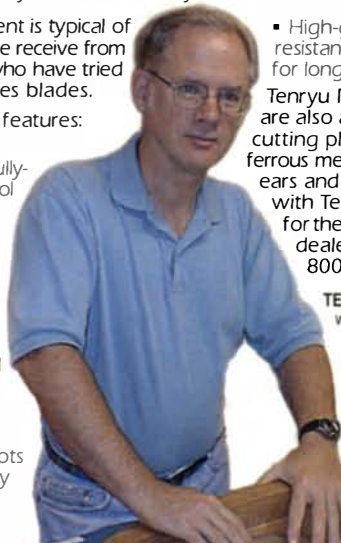
**"The cuts were so quiet and effortless it felt like I forgot to raise the blade"**

Hal Taylor, Museum Quality Works of Art, Hartwood, VA

Hals comment is typical of the many we receive from craftsmen who have tried our Pro Series blades.

Each blade features:

- Expertly-tensioned, fully-hardened tool steel plates for true run
- Fine grit honing of carbide edge for clean, smooth, and easy cuts
- Resin bond-filled expansion slots for extremely quiet cuts



- High-grade, wear-resistant carbide tips for long life
- Tenryu Pro Series blades are also available for cutting plastic and non-ferrous metals. So save your ears and make life easier with Tenryu blades. Ask for them at your favorite dealer or call 800-951-SAWS.

TENRYU AMERICA, INC.  
[www.tenryu.com](http://www.tenryu.com)

FOR YOUR SAFETY:  
Follow machine and manual safety instructions

Making quality saw blades since 1910  
**TENRYU**

READER SERVICE NO. 25



The Woodworker's Edge...

®

BRIDGEWOOD

### BW-002A Dust Collector

A compact and powerful 2 hp unit able to handle your wood dust requirements.  
**Now only \$279.00**

### BW-6R Jointer

A deluxe 6" jointer for smaller shops and serious woodworkers. 3-knife cutterhead and 1 hp motor. Center-mounted fence tilts both directions to 45° with stops.

**Now only \$399.00**



TSC-10CL shown with standard Align-a-Rip® 30" capacity rip fence.



### TSC-10CL Table Saw

This 10" saw has a large, cast iron work surface, powerful 1-1/2 hp induction motor and left-tilting arbor.  
**Now only \$579.00**

TSC-10CL has Turned steel pulleys and link drive belt



### BW-15P Planer

Economically priced 15" planer includes a 3-knife cutterhead, 3 hp motor, enclosed base with wheels and 3 roller infeed and outfeed supports.

**Now only \$995.00**



FOB, York, PA  
Prices subject to change without notice



For information and a **FREE** catalog

**1-800-235-2100**

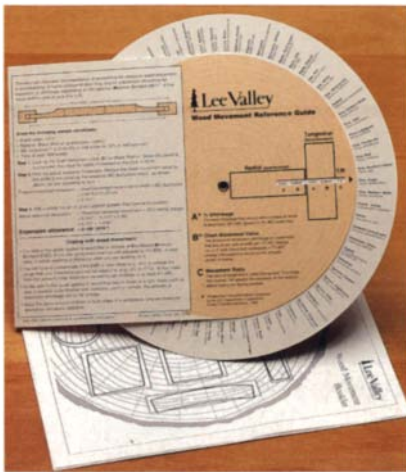
[www.wilkemach.com](http://www.wilkemach.com)

write or visit our showroom:  
3230 N Susquehanna Trail, York, PA 17402-9716

READER SERVICE NO. 61



## Wood-movement reference guide



For many woodworkers, predicting how much a board is going to change in width due to seasonal changes in humidity is pretty much a seat-of-the-pants guessing game. Of course, there has long been a formula for calculating wood movement, available in the *Wood Handbook* (U.S. Department of Agriculture), but the formula has just enough upper-case letters to scare off most liberal-arts majors.

Now, however, the *Wood Movement Reference Guide*

from Lee Valley Tools (800-871-8158; [www.leevalley.com](http://www.leevalley.com)) takes that same information from the government's book and makes it more convenient and user-friendly. Simply spin the dial to the desired wood species and use the resulting data to determine the amount of movement. The guide sells for about \$4.95. —T.B.

## Manufacturers' news

### Changes at Ridge Tool

Keeping track of who makes what and where isn't always easy these days. For example, Ridge Tool Co., maker of Ridgid tools and part of St. Louis-based Emerson Electric, recently announced that it is no longer in the business of manufacturing woodworking power tools. Instead, the company will license the Ridgid brand name to One World Technologies, which will build the tools overseas.

One World Technologies, located in Anderson, S.C., is part of Techtronic Industries (TTI), a Hong Kong company. Ridge Tool will continue to be involved in the design and quality standards of the line.

TTI has owned Ryobi Power Tools in North America since August 2000. TTI also builds some power tools for the Sears/Craftsman line.

In related news, this past August, Ridge Tool introduced a new 35-tool lineup of corded, cordless, benchtop, and stationary equipment for professional contractors, builders, and woodworkers. In the past, The Home Depot has been the exclusive outlet for Ridgid woodworking tools. Now, however, although The Home Depot is still the exclusive home-center retailer of the line, the tools also are sold nationally in electrical, plumbing, and industrial-supply centers.

In addition, Ridge Tool has revised its product warranty for this new line. Instead of the previous lifetime warranty, which covered material defects and workmanship, the company now has a 90-day satisfaction guarantee and a three-year limited warranty.

—T. B.

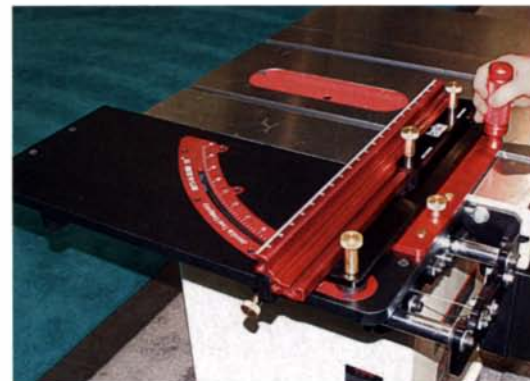
## Trade shows (continued)

the set cuts dados with flat bottoms. That's a feature some other quick-adjusting dado cutters have had trouble with.

The SD608 includes two 8-in.-dia. outside blades with 24 carbide-tipped teeth, five chippers, a wrench, and a plastic carrying case. It sells for about \$250. For more information, contact Freud at 800-334-4107 ([www.freudtools.com](http://www.freudtools.com)).

### Tablesaw sliding table from JessEm

The Mite-R-Slide TS, a new product from JessEm, is a sliding table that mounts to the left side of most cabinet saws to provide 24 in. of crosscut capacity.



it includes a miter fence adjustable to 45°. The Mite-R-Slide TS sells for about \$450. Further details are available toll-free at 866-272-7492 or at [www.jessem.com](http://www.jessem.com).

### Jet minilathe has variable speed

A turn of a knob is all it takes to vary the spindle speed from 500 rpm to 3,900 rpm on Jet's new Model JML-1014VS minilathe. Variable speed eliminates fussing with belts or pulleys.

Also featured is a ½-hp totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC) motor and a cast-iron lathe bed. A TEFC motor is less likely to suffer from clogged chips or sawdust. And cast iron is good at absorbing vibration. Model JML-1014VS sells for about \$380. More information is available from Jet at 800-274-6848 ([www.jettools.com](http://www.jettools.com)).

### Not your father's Delta bandsaw

The folks at Delta have added some useful bells and whistles to their venerable 14-in. bandsaw. Dubbed the X5, it features a 1½-hp motor, a 16-in. by 16-in. cast-iron table, a table insert with a small dust-extraction hole just behind the blade, a 4-in. dust port, an upper blade-guide assembly that won't free-fall when loosened, and a quick-release tension gauge. Unlike most other 14-in. bandsaws, Delta makes the trunnion support from cast iron to minimize table flexing when cutting a heavy board.

The Delta 14-in. X5 bandsaw sells for about \$900. As part of the X5 promotional series, purchasers can select from one of four free tools or a \$50 rebate. A coupon book is included as part of the promotion. You can get additional information by calling 800-438-2486 or logging on to [www.deltamachinery.com](http://www.deltamachinery.com).

—T.B.

**MAKE HEIGHT ADJUSTMENTS UP HERE.**



**NOT DOWN HERE.**

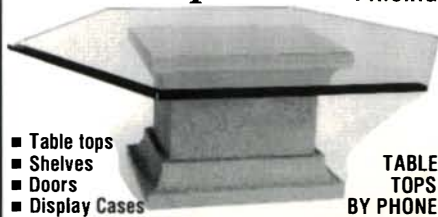
ABOVE THE TABLE AND BELOW, THE NEW 890 IS A ROUTER UNLIKE ANY OTHER. Replace bits and adjust heights without reaching under the table. Shut down from any grip. Change speeds for any project. What's more, the 2 1/4 HP soft-start motor moves effortlessly between fixed, plunge, even model 690 bases. In other words, it's the most versatile router on the market. Looks like someone has turned the router world on its head. For the nearest dealer, call 1-800-4US-TOOL [US], 1-800-463-3582 [CANADA], or visit [porter-cable.com](http://porter-cable.com). SMOOTH TRANSITIONS AT YOUR FINGERTIPS.



**PORTER  
CABLE**  
REDEFINING PERFORMANCE™

## Heavy Glass Table Tops

FACTORY DIRECT DISCOUNT PRICING



- Table tops
- Shelves
- Doors
- Display Cases
- Entertainment Centers
- Tempered Glass

TABLE TOPS BY PHONE SATISFACTION GUARANTEED!

WGB ■ SHAPES ■ THICKNESSES ■ EDGE DESIGNS  
Use Reader Service For FREE Catalog

**SALES 1-800-288-6854**

READER SERVICE NO. 160

**Attention: Makers of solid panel cabinet doors**



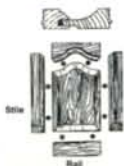
US Pat# 5317853

CDN Pat# 2115722

### Revolutionary NEW Product

The inexpensive solution to your age-old problem:

- Centers solid panels
- Compresses if panels expand
- Stops panel rattle
- Helps eliminate cracking glue joints



SPACEBALLS are 0.26" diameter - fit standard stile and rail cutters. 8 to 10 SPACEBALLS

**BLACK BRIDGE ONLINE INC.**

1-800-826-8912

blackbridgeonline.com

READER SERVICE NO. 43

**NEW!** BROOKLINE **COLORPLY**  
DECORATIVE COMPOSITE LUMBER

Amazing new product for turning, carving, etc.

8 patterns • Variety of sizes/thicknesses

**Brookside Veneers Ltd.**  
Cranbury, NJ 609-409-1311

colorply.com

READER SERVICE NO. 78

## HIDA TOOL & HARDWARE

1333 SAN PABLO AVE. BERKELEY, CA 94702  
510-524-3700 1-800-443-5512 hidatool@hidatool.com



Mitsukawa brand; ryoba & dozuki hardwood saws for furniture & cabinet makers.

Ryoba: 195mm & 210mm (21 teeth on cross-cut)  
Dozuki: 210mm & 240mm (27 teeth on cross-cut)

Visit our website at [www.hidatool.com](http://www.hidatool.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 35

**VENEERING and CLAMPING with VACUUM**

VACUUM PRESSING SYSTEMS, INC.  
553 RIVER ROAD  
BRUNSWICK, MAINE 04011  
207-725-0935 / FAX 207-725-0932  
800-382-4109

The leader in vacuum technology for woodworking offers a complete line of innovative products for:

- VENEERING
- LAMINATING
- CLAMPING

**NEW products include:**  
Flip Top Frame Presses,  
Inflatable Bladders  
and Videos

READER SERVICE NO. 188

# The Easy Rout.



**The Leigh Dovetail Jig has it all.** Hobbyist or professional, the Leigh D4 Dovetail Jig will ensure you create your best work. Versatility, precision and superb value make the Leigh Dovetail Jig better than the rest. Rout through and half-blind dovetails up to 24" wide in boards up to 1 1/2" thick, with infinitely variable spacing of pins and tails — all on one jig. Plus, rout sliding and angled dovetails easily with the D4. And create decorative Isoloc joints, finger joints, and multiple mortise & tenons effortlessly with Leigh attachments and our exceptional user guides! Make routing easier with Leigh. Call toll free now!

**Call For Your FREE Leigh Catalog Today! 1-800-663-8932**

**LEIGH**

Joining Tradition With Today

Leigh Industries Ltd., PO Box 357  
Port Coquitlam, BC Canada V3C 4K6  
Toll free 1-800-663-8932 Tel. 604 464-2700  
Fax 604 464-7404 Web [www.leighjigs.com](http://www.leighjigs.com)



## TWO GREAT BRANDS. ONE GREAT DEAL.



### Buy the best-selling JET XACTA™ SAW and get a **BOSCH** Router FREE.

Priced at just \$1,699, the 10" XACTA™ SAW, with a powerful 3HP motor, and packaged with the XACTA™ LIFT with a deluxe router fence, is a great deal. And now it's even better! Because if you buy this XACTA™ SAW package now, we'll upgrade your purchase to include our new Premier MicroAdjust Fence...that's a \$100 value!

But that's not all. You'll also get a Bosch Router...**absolutely free**. Valued at \$189, the Bosch 2 1/4 HP electronic, variable-speed router is the top choice. This complete package saves you a total of \$289! For more details, visit your local dealer, [www.jettools.com](http://www.jettools.com), [www.bosch.com](http://www.bosch.com) or call 1-800-274-6848.

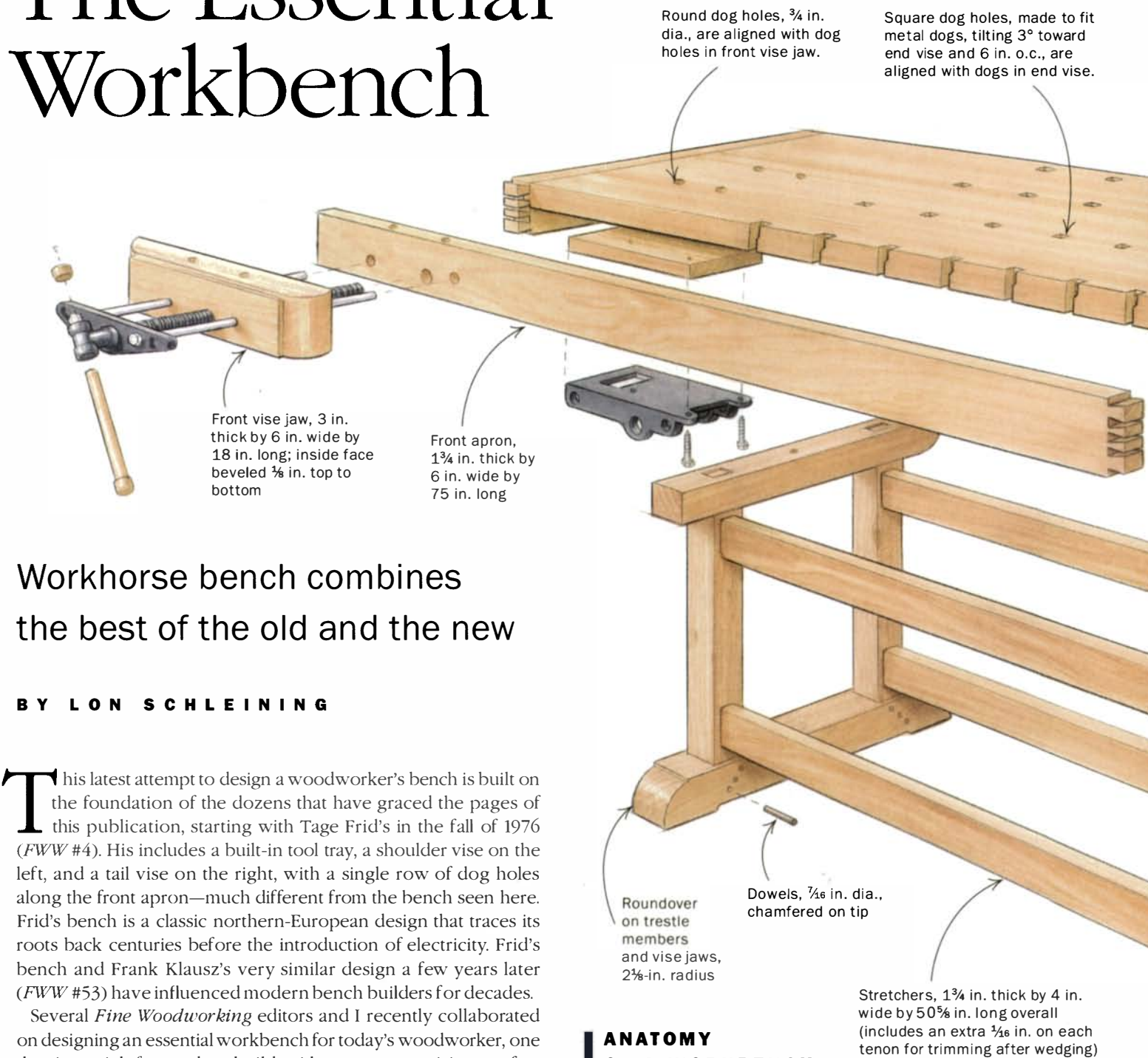
# JET®

Offer valid September 1, 2003 through April 30, 2004.

READER SERVICE NO. 79

Powermatic, Performax and JET. A Family of Brands.

# The Essential Workbench



Workhorse bench combines the best of the old and the new

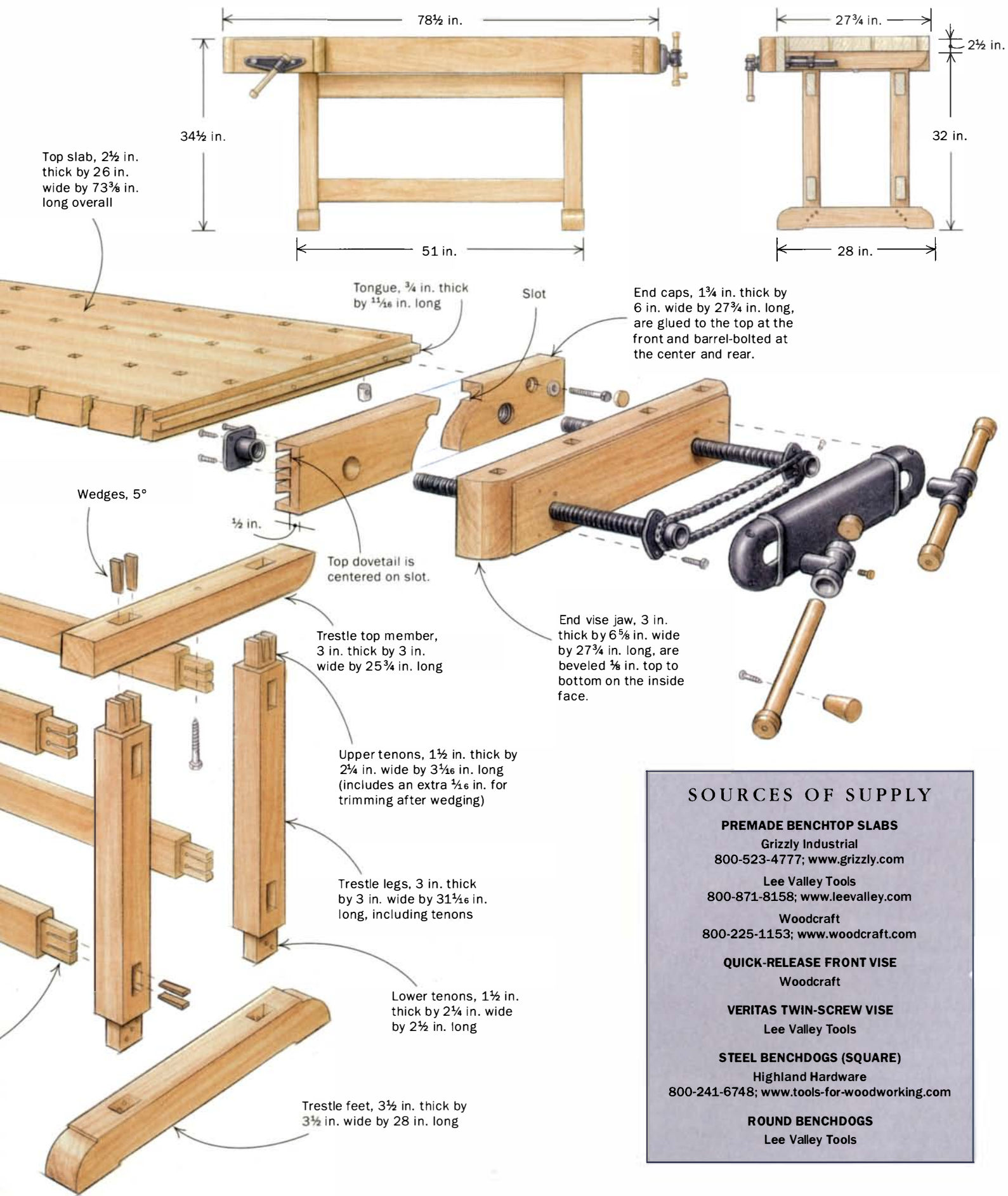
BY LON SCHLEINING

This latest attempt to design a woodworker's bench is built on the foundation of the dozens that have graced the pages of this publication, starting with Tage Frid's in the fall of 1976 (*FWW* #4). His includes a built-in tool tray, a shoulder vise on the left, and a tail vise on the right, with a single row of dog holes along the front apron—much different from the bench seen here. Frid's bench is a classic northern-European design that traces its roots back centuries before the introduction of electricity. Frid's bench and Frank Klausz's very similar design a few years later (*FWW* #53) have influenced modern bench builders for decades.

Several *Fine Woodworking* editors and I recently collaborated on designing an essential workbench for today's woodworker, one that is straightforward to build without compromising performance. This bench was designed to be a tool—more workhorse than showpiece. We did not include traditional components simply for history's sake, and we took advantage of modern innovations. We also wanted this bench to be a project that most woodworkers could build using tools found in an average small shop: tablesaw, portable planer, crosscut saw, router, drill press, and hand tools. The

## ANATOMY OF A WORKBENCH

This bench consists of (and construction proceeds in this order): a trestle base joined with mortise-and-tenons; a thick top laminated from boards set on edge; and front and end vises, both with wood jaws.

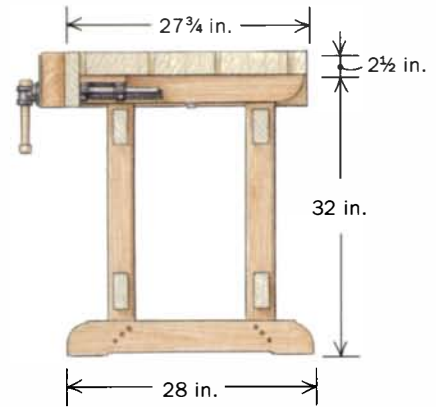


Top slab, 2 1/2 in. thick by 26 in. wide by 73 3/8 in. long overall

34 1/2 in.

78 1/2 in.

51 in.



Tongue, 3/4 in. thick by 1 1/8 in. long

Slot

End caps, 1 1/4 in. thick by 6 in. wide by 27 3/4 in. long, are glued to the top at the front and barrel-bolted at the center and rear.

Wedges, 5°

1/2 in.

Top dovetail is centered on slot.

Trestle top member, 3 in. thick by 3 in. wide by 25 3/4 in. long

End vise jaw, 3 in. thick by 6 5/8 in. wide by 27 3/4 in. long, are beveled 3/8 in. top to bottom on the inside face.

Upper tenons, 1 1/2 in. thick by 2 1/4 in. wide by 3 3/8 in. long (includes an extra 1/8 in. for trimming after wedging)

Trestle legs, 3 in. thick by 3 in. wide by 31 1/8 in. long, including tenons

Lower tenons, 1 1/2 in. thick by 2 1/4 in. wide by 2 1/2 in. long

Trestle feet, 3 1/2 in. thick by 3 1/2 in. wide by 28 in. long

## SOURCES OF SUPPLY

### PREMADE BENCHTOP SLABS

Grizzly Industrial  
800-523-4777; [www.grizzly.com](http://www.grizzly.com)

Lee Valley Tools  
800-871-8158; [www.leevalley.com](http://www.leevalley.com)

Woodcraft  
800-225-1153; [www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)

### QUICK-RELEASE FRONT VISE

Woodcraft

### VERITAS TWIN-SCREW VISE

Lee Valley Tools

### STEEL BENCHDOGS (SQUARE)

Highland Hardware  
800-241-6748; [www.tools-for-woodworking.com](http://www.tools-for-woodworking.com)

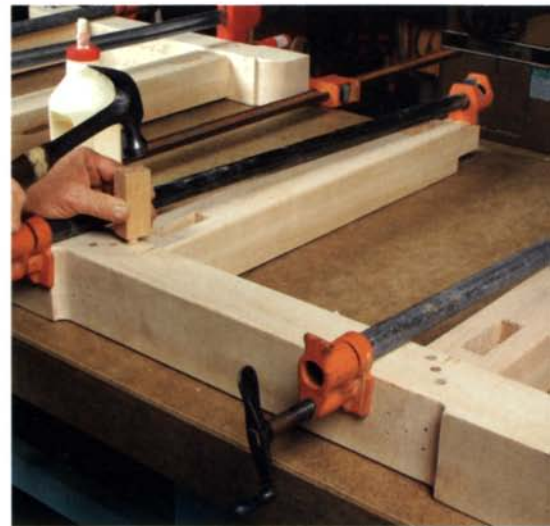
### ROUND BENCHDOGS

Lee Valley Tools

## BASE ASSEMBLY

The deep mortise-and-tenon joints are either draw-pinned or wedged to ensure decades of rigidity. First, assemble the trestles, then add the long stretchers to complete the base.

### BLIND MORTISE-AND-TENONS ARE PINNED FOR STRENGTH



**The feet are pinned to the legs.** Start by drilling the dowel holes in the feet, dry-fitting the joints, and transferring (left) the dowel-hole locations to the tenons. Then use a center punch (center) to offset those locations slightly on the tenons, creating the draw effect. Last, apply glue to all surfaces, assemble the joint, and drive home the dowels (right).

only heavy-duty tool I used was a 3-hp tablesaw. Ripping lots of 8/4 maple puts a strain on even a large saw, so use a clean, sharp blade.

#### A durable workbench requires beefy parts

Avid woodworkers themselves, *FWW* editors regularly visit shops across the country, and they see a wide array of workbench configurations. Like all woodworkers, they know what they like and don't like. In the end we all compromised a bit, but we reached a solid consensus. My own involvement arose from having spent the last year researching and writing a book on workbenches (look for it in the fall of 2004 from The Taunton Press). I was commissioned to finalize this design, write the article, and build the bench.

**A thick, solid top**—We decided on an overall size of 28 in. wide by 6 ft. long. Add a few inches for vise jaws, and it's a nice, big top.

The editors thought 2 in. in top thickness would be plenty, with extra thickness at the edges, but I made this top 2½ in. thick because it wasn't much more difficult to mill and laminate thicker pieces. However, if you start with a premade bench slab, the standard 1¾-in. thickness offers plenty of mass and solidity for serious hand-tool use, especially after adding the thicker apron and end caps.

Gluing up the slab allowed me to machine the square dog holes before the pieces were assembled. Round dog holes might be a better option for a premade slab because square ones are best cut while the top slab is in pieces.

**Heavy, rigid base**—I wanted the benchtop and base to be nicely proportioned. Many benches I've seen look like top-heavy slabs on spindly legs. Also, it was important that the bench not rack or skid across the floor under heavy handplaning. A thick trestle base,

#### A jig makes easy work of mortises

There are 16 mortises (and tenons) in the base but only two different sizes. Make two mortising jigs to speed up layout and guide the chisels. The jig is made from three blocks glued and screwed together, with a fence attached on each side to hug the workpiece.



**Locate and lay out the mortises.** With the jig, this job should go quickly.



**Drill out most of the waste.** The layout lines will guide you. For the blind mortises, set the drill press's depth stop.



**Chop out the rest with chisels.** Remove most of the material with a ½-in. chisel before switching to a wider one. The jig will guide the chisels precisely.



## THROUGH-TENONS ARE WEDGED



**Wedge the top members and stretchers.** The slots in the tenons are angled 5° to match the wedge angle. A hole is drilled at the base of each slot to prevent splitting. Apply glue to all surfaces, including the wedges and slots; assemble the joint; and drive home the wedges (above), using a block of wood to protect them from direct blows. Last, connect the two trestles with the upper and lower stretchers (below), wedging their tenons in place.

joined with pinned or wedged mortise-and-tenons, guarantees stability. I laminated 8/4 lumber to make these thick members (and the top slab) because 8/4 is readily available in most regions.

Splitting the stretchers, two high and two low, leaves a perfect opening for a future cabinet with drawers. The traditional single, wide stretcher would have saved some time, but it also would have blocked this natural storage area.

**Innovative vises**—Hundreds of woodworkers probably would say they could not get through a day without a conventional tail vise, which is designed primarily for clamping things flat on the benchtop between dogs. Others would say the same for a shoulder vise, which offers the capability of clamping workpieces between its jaws without interference from guide bars or screws. The Veritas Twin-Screw Vise incorporates some of the capabilities of both types, allowing long boards or large panels to be clamped with benchdogs as well as clamping an upright board up to 15 in. wide for operations such as dovetailing. The two screws are connected with a chain, preventing the jaws from racking no matter where a workpiece is located or which row of dog holes is used.

I've always loved the look and performance of thick wooden jaws on a front vise but found it tedious to crank the long screw in and out constantly. I was tempted to install a cast-iron, quick-action Record-style vise, until I found a German-made quick-action vise screw and guide bars at Woodcraft. That allowed me to design a wooden front jaw to match the one I made for the Veritas end vise



# BENCHTOP GLUE-UP

The benchtop is made of 8/4 maple, set on edge. Make the top in sections narrow enough to fit through the thickness planer.

## MAKE UP THE TOP SLAB IN SECTIONS



**Joint and plane the pieces.** Run them through the planer on edge to ensure uniformity.



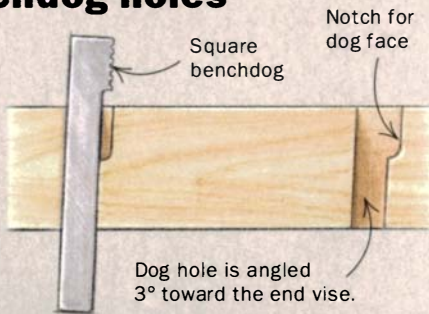
**Glue up the top.** The base makes a level glue-up platform, but protect it from drips. Use a notched card to spread glue.



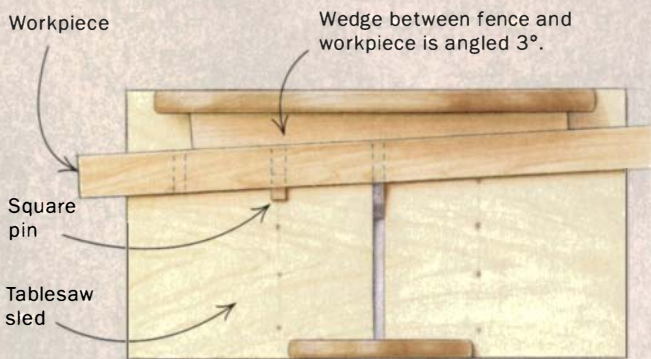
**Use cauls to keep the slab flat.** Wrap them with clear tape for easy cleanup. Snug them down first, then clamp across the width.

## Milling benchdog holes

Cut the holes for the square benchdogs with a dado blade before glue-up. The notches for the dog faces can be routed or chopped out with a chisel.



**Dado the dog holes.** Use a crosscut sled with a wedge against the fence to cut the slots at a 3° angle. A square pin sets the distance between dog slots.



TOP VIEW OF SLED

and still have quick action. However, a cast-iron vise also would have been fine (see *FWW* #158, pp. 56-59, for proper installation), and a patternmaker's vise is an interesting option.

**Both square and round benchdogs**—The debates over round vs. square and wood vs. metal will go on as long as folks work wood. All dogs have advantages, but I prefer square, steel ones. However, lots of accessories are designed to fit into 3/4-in. round holes, so I incorporated both types into the bench. For the end vise, I milled square dog holes to fit specific steel dogs. But I can make wood ones if I choose, fitting them to the holes for the metal dogs. I ran two rows of 3/4-in. round dog holes for the front vise. This gives me the option of using round dogs as well as hold-downs and holdfasts, which use 3/4-in. holes. The round dog holes also provide the option of locating and securing jigs with 3/4-in. dowel pins.

**No tool tray**—I like tool trays, but many woodworkers think they are only good for collecting debris. Although this design lacks one, a tool tray could be attached easily to the back of the benchtop. Keep in mind that the large space between the stretchers will house a small chest of drawers for protected storage close at hand.

## Build the base first

It's more glamorous to build the top than the base. But if you build the base first, you can use it for gluing up the top slab. Then, when the top is ready, you can set it on the base to finish installing the vises. Wedged mortise-and-tenons join the legs and stretchers, creating strong resistance to racking; pegged mortise-and-tenons join legs to feet. Laminating two layers of 8/4 material (each 1 1/4 in. thick after surfacing) creates the right thickness for the base members. Mill the legs and top crossmembers down to 3 in. square but leave the feet at 3 1/2 in. square.

Leave the stretchers the full 1 1/4 in. in thickness and rip them 3/8 in. oversize in width to allow them to move. When a wide plank is ripped into narrower pieces, tension in it is released, resulting in boards that bow one way or the other. Let the stretcher stock sit for two days, straighten and rip it to rough width, then run it through a



**Flatten the slab.** A five-board section of the top slab is narrow enough to fit through a benchtop planer.

portable planer on edge to clean each edge and bring the pieces to final width. If there's any fitting to be done, it's easier to do it on the tenons, so cut the mortises first, using a four-sided guide block to help with the chisel work. Then cut the tenons on the tablesaw, using a dado set.

**Cutting the thumbnail profile**—For the next task, cutting a large thumbnail profile on the feet, it will be worth your time to install a sharp new blade on the bandsaw. Before cutting the curve, I used a tablesaw and a crosscut sled to cut the small step at the top of the profile. After the bandsaw cut, the smoothing went quickly using a rasp and some files, followed by sandpaper.

**Assembling the base**—Start with the two trestle assemblies; it's critical that they be flat and square. After the dowels have been driven home and the glue has set, dry-fit and then glue and wedge



**Now glue three sections into one big slab.** Place a try square across the dog holes and use a long bar clamp diagonally to correct any misalignment. Again, use lots of clamps and cauls to keep the sections level.

the stretchers in place. Put glue in the mortises and on the tenons as well as on the wedges and in the wedge slots. At every step of the way, measure diagonally to make sure everything stays square, and sight across the trestle tops to be sure the assembly doesn't twist as you clamp it. Your eye will pick up minute variations.

### Build the top

The boards for the top are plainsawn 8/4 stock set on edge and laminated face to face. The top's finished thickness is 2½ in., but you should expect some bowing when you rip the boards from wider stock, so rip the boards for the slab just under 3 in. wide. Once the strips have stabilized for a day or two, joint them straight on one edge, rip them on the tablesaw to about 2¾ in., and then plane them on edge to about 2⅝ in. This leaves the pieces ⅛ in. oversize to allow for finish planing after each section is glued up. Cut the slots for the square dogs now, while the pieces are separate.

### TRIM THE ENDS OF THE TOP IN TWO STEPS



**Use the simple two-fence jig shown.** Rout deep slots in both sides of the slab, then use a jigsaw to cut off the waste, leaving square shoulders and a tongue that will fit into the end caps.



## INSTALL THE VISES, APRON, AND END CAPS

Because of the half-blind dovetails, the end caps and front apron must be fitted and attached to the bench one at a time, from right to left, as are the vises.



**Cut the right-hand set of half-blind dovetails.** First, cut the tails in the front apron, and then clamp the front apron in place with the right-hand end cap behind it to transfer the layout of the dovetails.



**Attach the large vise nuts to the back of the end cap.** Also, finish cutting and fitting the dovetails.

Most woodworkers have a portable surface planer capable of planing a 12-in.-wide board. So glue up and mill the 26-in. top slab in three sections of five boards, each able to fit through the planer and easier to handle than the full slab.

Clamping with cauls is a two-step process. First, align the boards by applying clamp pressure to the cauls. After the boards are in line, clamp them together horizontally. Aside from straight cauls, the other key to success is a flat gluing surface. The top crossmembers on the base form the perfect platform to prevent the top from twisting during glue-up.

A damp (not wet) toothbrush makes short work of cleaning the glue out of the dog holes as long as this is done immediately after the slab is clamped up. Once the glue has set for an hour or so, remove the cauls and scrape off the excess glue. Let each slab cure overnight before moving on to the next one.

**Plane the sections before gluing up the entire slab**—If the cauls have been placed correctly, the glued slab sections should be flat with no twist. Remove any leftover glue from the top surfaces. Then, with the top surface of the slabs down on the planer bed, run them through, taking light cuts until the bottom surface is clean. Turn the slabs top-surface-up and run them through again, taking light cuts until the top surface is clean. Turn them over once more and plane the underside until you reach the 2½-in. thickness.

Gluing together the slabs is a lot like gluing up the individual sections. Again, use the top crossmembers on the base and lots of cauls to keep the pieces aligned. Then it's simple to close the last of the glue joints. However, check the dog-hole locations with a square to be sure they all will be the same distance from the end vise.

**A neat trick for trimming the slab to length**—Not many of us own a saw capable of accurately crosscutting a very heavy slab almost 2½ ft. wide and more than 6 ft. long. For this project, a simple

router jig will allow you, in one operation, both to trim each end accurately and to create some necessary joinery (see the bottom photos on p. 43). By cutting deep dadoes on the top and bottom of the slab, a tongue is formed, which fits into a slot milled into the end cap. Cut the remaining ¾-in. tongue to length with a jigsaw (not an important glue surface so not a critical cut). Cut the mating slots in the end caps using a dado set on the tablesaw.

**Install the end caps and front apron**—The end caps cover the end grain of the top slab and help keep the slab flat. The right-hand end cap also serves as the rear jaw for the end vise. The front apron beefs up the thickness at this critical work area and serves as the rear jaw for the front vise. I not only needed a strong mechanical joint holding the front apron to the end caps, but I also wanted the areas that act as vise jaws to remain flat, with no end grain protruding as it would if I used through-dovetails or finger joints at the corners. Half-blind dovetails seemed to be the perfect solution, oriented as shown in the drawing on p. 39.

After cutting the joinery but before gluing the end caps and front rail in place, use a drill press to bore the holes for the vise hardware. Mount the end caps with cross-barrel bolts. The Veritas vise includes four of these; use two for each end cap. Apply glue only along the front 3 in. or 4 in. of the tongue and the groove. This limits wood movement of the slab toward the back of the bench.

The front apron is attached to the slab with glue only (and help from the half-blind dovetails).

### Mount the vises and attach the top

Both vises come with thorough instructions, making the hardware straightforward to mount. The twin-screw vise attaches to the bench rather simply, with its two large screws passing through large nuts attached to the inner face of the end cap. It's critical that holes in the front and rear jaws align perfectly, so drill them at the



**Now for the front vise.** Start by attaching the mounting bracket under the benchtop. The blocking under the bracket will increase the clamping capacity.



**Locate the clearance holes in the front apron.** Clamp the front apron accurately in place and tap a brad-point drill bit through the holes in the hardware to transfer their locations. Drill the holes in the front apron and front vise jaw at the same time.

same time. The length of the chain determines the distance between holes, so careful layout is in order. The vertical location of the holes is determined by adding 1½ in. to the thickness of the top slab to allow the large vise nuts to clear the underside of the benchtop.

Mounting the front-vise hardware and the large wood jaw is even more straightforward. First, the mounting bracket must be bolted to the underside of the benchtop. I used ⅝-in. lag screws. Next, the vise screw and guide bars are run through the bracket to locate their clearance holes in the front rail. Last, make the large wood jaw and bolt it to the vise hardware. Somewhere along the way, the front jaws for both vises must receive their large thumb-nail profile, identical to the one on the trestle feet.

Once you have all of the hardware and vises in place, mill a ¼-in. bevel on each of the outside jaws to accommodate flex in the hardware as the jaws tighten, which helps them maintain good clamping pressure at the top. Now you can attach the top to the base. Two lag bolts along the centerline of the bench are plenty for attaching the benchtop to the trestle base.

### Flatten the top and finish the bench

Do the final flattening after the top has been mounted to the base and all of the vises are in place. If your glue-ups went well, all you will have to do is some scraping and sanding.

I didn't want a slick finish, as beautiful as it might be. Clamps, hold-downs, and vises depend on friction to hold parts securely. The traditional finish for a benchtop is linseed oil thinned with turpentine, which seals the wood enough to make glue removal pretty easy but doesn't make the surface more slippery than it is naturally. However, I wiped on a thinned varnish for greater protection. To make sure moisture absorption is even on all sides, it's important to coat the top and underside of the bench equally. □

*Lon Schleining is a contributing editor.*



**Attach the front-vise hardware to the front jaw.** Use the vise hardware to clamp the front jaw in its proper position before drilling for the attachment screws. Last, cut the half-blind dovetails on the left-hand end cap and attach it.



**Assemble the hardware for the twin-screw end vise.** Clips join the chain at the proper length. Again, use the vise hardware to clamp the jaw in position before drilling for the attachment screws.



# A Shop Inspired by School Memories

This well-lit workspace features an open floor plan organized for efficient workflow

BY MARK BELLONBY

**M**y introduction to woodworking took place in a high-school arts building during the late 1960s. The building included a large, first-floor woodshop with a high ceiling and tall, Gothic windows that provided plenty of natural light and cross ventilation.

Space between machines and benches in the shop was plentiful, and the tools were stored in beautiful, enclosed oak cabinets. Eventually, I had a key to the building, and I sometimes would work until the early hours of the morning, completely lost in the craft of making furniture.

That bright and airy school shop became the standard against which all of my later shops were measured. For many years, I had little choice but to cope with workshops located in dark, dusty, and confined basements or garages. I hoped someday to have a workplace that offered the many advantages of that wonderful school shop.

## Must-have design considerations

Two years ago, I finally got the opportunity to design my own free-standing shop. The obvious deficiencies I'd put up with for so long made it easy to come up with a list of goals for the new space.

An architect by profession, I produced the design and drawings using a computer-aided design (CAD) system. The builder, Martin Jarvis, helped keep costs in line, and he was frequently consulted during the design process. He encouraged me to consider a simple building shape and to use standard windows and skylights. He also helped me find cost-effective materials, like the base-grade, strip-oak flooring I ended up using.

To allow room for machinery and work in process, it was most important for me to have a generous amount of floor space. High

## PLANNING PAYS OFF

In designing his dream workshop, Bellonby placed a premium on having lots of light, ventilation, and elbow room. Equally important, however, was having work zones arranged in a logical fashion.

**Design room offers additional work-space.** The large desk in the office is a perfect surface for laying out veneer.



**Divider adds storage.** A freestanding partition provides a sturdy wall for storing tools and accessories, and the shelves can be used for wood storage.



**Workbench is centrally located.** The most convenient location for the workbench proved to be approximately in the middle of the shop.



**Tools within easy reach.** A freestanding hand-tool cabinet occupies a corner of the shop not far from the workbench.



**Converting stationary to portable.** Several tools can be moved around the shop on shopmade mobile bases.

ceilings were a priority, and the floor plan had to be flexible to allow for rearranging machines.

Like my school shop, I wanted mine to be bright and airy, almost an extension of the outside. Evenly distributed natural light was going to be critical to the design, as well as excellent ventilation. That meant the shop had to have large windows and skylights, all located to provide maximum light and quick air changes.

Several other design objectives also were important. I wanted to minimize noise from the air compressor and dust-collection system. Also, the building had to be energy efficient. And, should the need ever arise, I wanted a building that could be converted to an alternate use with relative ease.

A separate finishing room would have been nice, but I figured it would take up too much space. At some point in the future, a nearby outbuilding has the potential to become a finishing room.

### A smart, flexible floor plan

Using a scale model for guidance, I sited the shop 20 ft. from an existing farm outbuilding. That allowed me to use part of the outbuilding for storage. A concrete slab between the two buildings is easily accessed through large doors in each building. This small courtyard is protected somewhat by the buildings and nearby trees, and I often use the area to plane or sand when I want to enjoy the outdoors or keep messy operations out of the workshop.

Also, in an open area against one of the walls, I included a deep sink that's handy for cleanup of all sorts.

### Separate work zones in the shop room

Using the CAD computer software, I placed drawings of each machine onto the floor plan of the shop room and moved them around. I considered a number of arrangements before finding one that looked best. This process proved most helpful when it came time to add the real machinery to the shop. However, in the course of using the shop for about a year, I have occasionally reshuffled the machines to fine-tune the layout.

The shop machinery is organized into four general work zones: two machine-tool areas, a hand-tool area, and an assembly area. Because the shop room is a relatively small area, most of the machines are on shopmade mobile bases so that they can be moved around to create more floor area as needed. The heavy tools, however, like the tablesaw, wood lathe, and metalworking lathe, are stationary.

### Wood and wood storage

Wood-storage areas often take up a lot of space. They also provide an attractive habitat for all kinds of animals and insects. To minimize such problems, I put my lumber racks, sheet-good storage, and veneer-storage crates in the adjacent outbuilding, along with a 12-in. sliding miter saw for cutting boards to rough length.

Solid wood goes into the shop as it is needed. So only a limited amount of wood is stored in the main building. Full-size plywood and other sheet goods are either cut to rough size in the courtyard or run through the tablesaw. In the future they will be done on a panel saw I plan to add in the outbuilding.

### Convenient accessories

I arranged floor-mounted dust-collection ports and power outlets adjacent to each other, creating a series of utility stations of sorts.

## ONE SHOP, TWO WORKSPACES

The two primary areas of the building are a shop room to the west and a design/multipurpose room to the east. Between them are a small bathroom and two closets—one housing the air compressor and one containing the dust-collection system. Because the compressor and dust collector are enclosed, Bellonby hears just enough noise to know that they're running.

### OFFICE

The design/multipurpose room has a 9-ft. ceiling with a storage attic containing a pump unit for heating and cooling. The attic is easily accessed via a ladder in the shop room.

### DUST COLLECTION

A central dust-collection system was designed with help from Oneida Air Systems. Starting the collector simply is a matter of opening the blast gate at the machine and then using a remote-control switch to start the system. The ducts run under the floor in the crawl space.

### WORKBENCH

The workbench is the center of activity for cutting and milling. It is placed in a relatively central location to allow easy access to the hand-tool cabinet, the router table, and the belt/disc sander. Near the workbench are wall-mounted racks for hardware and sanding supplies.

Whenever possible, I tried to locate the stations in areas that always would be likely places to put machinery, even if it all was rearranged some day. In general, this approach has worked out pretty well, although the stations can become obstacles when machinery is wheeled out of the way.

The compressed-air system was designed to include a port within 20 ft. of each machine. A port also is located at the dust collector and outside the building in the courtyard. That outside port gets a lot of use, as I prefer working al fresco for certain woodworking tasks, such as sanding. All of the pipes slope to a drain in the crawl space. It's important for the pipes to slope, because any water that collects at a low spot can wreak havoc with certain air tools.

The generous upper wall spaces, courtesy of the cathedral ceiling, are good places to put speaker mounts. And a television on a high shelf is welcomed at break time. □

*Mark Bellonby is an architect and woodworker living in northern Virginia.*





### WOODSTOVE

A small woodstove provides all the heat necessary for the shop room. For safety, the stove is not lit when Bellonby is using finishes or other flammable products.

### CEILING FANS

Four ceiling fans help move the air. Each one is mounted 10 ft. above the floor, so there is plenty of overhead clearance.

### AIR CLEANER

A centrally located air cleaner, suspended from the ceiling, helps remove airborne dust.

### LIGHTS

In the shop room, Bellonby opted for four large incandescent fixtures with enclosed housings.

### ROOF

The roof is a simple rectangle set on a framed wall. In the shop room, the roof rafters are supported at the ridge by a steel I-beam. Support for the I-beam is provided by a concealed steel column.

### SKYLIGHTS

Four skylights on each side of the roof let in lots of evenly distributed, natural light.

### PARTITION STORAGE SPACE

A 7-ft.-high partition next to the table saw provides convenient hanging space for tools and accessories as well as shelf space for wood storage.

### TABLESAW

The table saw is angled slightly to face the doors, which can be opened to accommodate the occasional extralong board that requires ripping.

Take a tour  
online

For a virtual tour of the shop, go to  
[www.finewoodworking.com/  
toolsandshops](http://www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops).

# 9 Midsize Tablesaws

How contractor-style saws and hybrids measure up

BY ROLAND JOHNSON



**W**hen setting up a new workshop, the first big purchase for most people is a tablesaw. Priced and sized in between the large cabinet saws and small benchtop saws, a contractor-style saw is the logical choice for many woodworkers. I surveyed several brands on the market and came away from the experience pleasantly surprised.

Seven of the machines I looked at are conventional contractor-style saws: Bridgwood TSC-10CL, Delta 36-426, General 50-185M1, Grizzly 1022ProZ, Jet JWTS-10JF, Powermatic 64A, and Woodtek TSC-B. I also tested two hybrids—the DeWalt DW746 and Jet JWSS-10LFR—which are designed to bridge the gap between contractor's and cabinet saws.

## Overall quality has improved

Not too many years ago, reasonably priced woodworking machinery often left a lot to be desired when it came to the quality of materials and machining. When it comes to contractor's saws, that appears to be a thing of the past.

I checked all of the tabletops for flatness. With the exception of the table on the Grizzly, all of the tables were nearly perfectly flat front to back, side to side, and diagonally. The miter slots were within 0.001 in. in width end to end; all of them were within 0.002 to 0.003 in. in width to each other; and all were within 0.004 in. of

being perfectly parallel. The only flaws I found were that some of the table extensions tipped up at the outside edge, which could easily be remedied with a shim and a bit of tinkering.

Bevel and height adjusters worked well, and with all of these saws you can make adjustments in the gears that raise and lower the blade and change the angle setting. A lock knob in the crank handle of each saw secures the arbor's location, although the DeWalt would benefit from bigger crank handles.

I used a Forrest 10-in. testing disc—a sawblade blank that is accurate to within plus or minus 0.001 in.—to test for runout at the rim of the blade. Runout on all of the saws was 0.004 in. or less: an acceptable tolerance.

Except for the Delta, which uses cast-aluminum pulleys, all of the

## TESTING EACH MACHINE

Using a Starrett straightedge and feeler gauges, Johnson checked the flatness of each table side to side (near right), front to back, and diagonally. All but the Grizzly were notably flat. He used a Forrest testing disc to check runout (far right), and checked whether the factory settings of the trunnions and motors were parallel to the miter-gauge slots in the tops. Johnson also ripped and crosscut 8/4 white oak and hard maple (left) as a real-world test of the machines under load.



saws use machined iron pulleys. A few of the saws could benefit from higher-quality belts, but most of them ran smoothly with little or no vibration. Only the Grizzly comes equipped with a link belt, which reduces vibration and makes the saw run more quietly.

In short, I was impressed with the overall fit and finish of these machines.

### Good fences make good saws

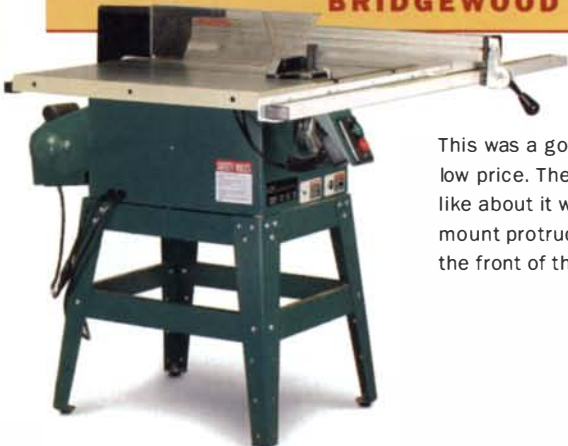
Over the last decade, tablesaw fences have improved. Bill Biesemeyer did the woodworking world a real favor when he designed his simple, effective, beam-style rip fence. The majority of the saws I looked at have a variation on the Biesemeyer-style fence, and the one thing they all have in common is a lack of measurable side de-

flection. The Powermatic and the Jet JWTS-10JF have identical fences, and the General and Grizzly have fences only slightly different from those. The Woodtek and the Bridgewood saws also have fences identical to each other.

The General uses melamine for the faces of its fence, while the Grizzly, the Jets, and the Powermatic use UHMW (ultrahigh molecular weight) material for reduced friction. The Woodtek and the Bridgewood have a milled face on the aluminum extrusion that makes up the fence on each machine.

The General's fence is a closer copy of the original Biesemeyer fence in that the cam lever that locks it in place and the rail pad on which the fence glides are simpler than the others. Also, a rubber grommet on the cam lever allows the lever to be locked in the up

### BRIDGEWOOD TSC-10CL



This was a good, solid saw at a low price. The only thing I didn't like about it was that the switch mount protruded too far out at the front of the saw.

<b>Street price</b>	\$549
<b>Motor</b>	1½ hp/18 amps at 120v
<b>Blade tilt</b>	Left
<b>Maximum rip capacity</b>	32 in.
<b>Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc</b>	0.004 in.
<b>Blade alignment</b>	0.005 in. out of parallel
<b>Dust collection</b>	Tray in base of saw cabinet with 4-in.-dia. outlet

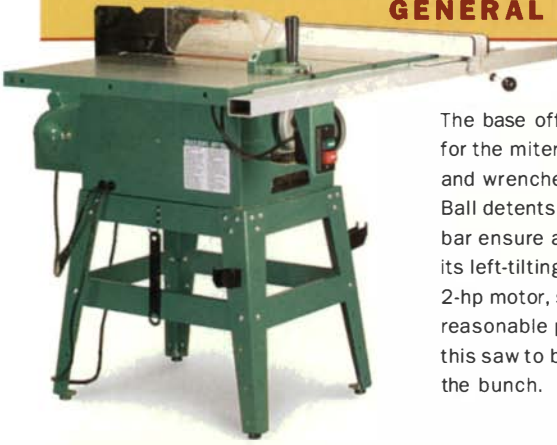
### DELTA 36-426



The Delta was a well-made and appointed machine. The Delta Unifence was versatile, accurate, and easy to operate. However, the machine could use a better dust-collection system.

<b>Street price</b>	\$849
<b>Motor</b>	1½ hp/12.8 amps at 120v
<b>Blade tilt</b>	Right
<b>Maximum rip capacity</b>	32 in.
<b>Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc</b>	0.003 in.
<b>Blade alignment</b>	0.002 in. out of parallel
<b>Dust collection</b>	Slanted, open tray between legs of stand

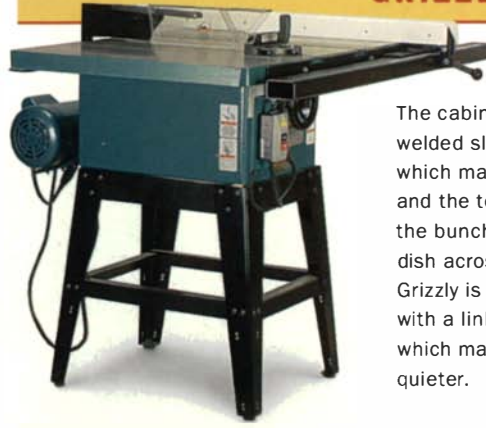
## GENERAL 50-185M1



The base offers storage areas for the miter gauge, rip fence, and wrenches—a nice touch. Ball detents in the miter-gauge bar ensure an accurate fit. With its left-tilting blade, powerful 2-hp motor, sturdy fence, and reasonable price, I consider this saw to be the best buy of the bunch.

Street price	\$649
Motor	2 hp/15 amps at 120v
Blade tilt	Left
Maximum rip capacity	30 $\frac{3}{4}$ in.
Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc	0.003 in.
Blade alignment	0.000 in. out of parallel
Dust collection	Tray in base of saw cabinet with 4-in.-dia. outlet

## GRIZZLY 1022PROZ



The cabinet of the saw was welded slightly out of square, which made assembly difficult, and the top was the least flat of the bunch, with a 0.02-in.-deep dish across one diagonal. The Grizzly is the only saw that comes with a link belt as standard issue, which makes the machine run quieter.

Street price	\$595
Motor	2 hp/16 amps at 120v
Blade tilt	Right
Maximum rip capacity	25 in.
Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc	0.003 in.
Blade alignment	0.004 in. out of parallel
Dust collection	Tray in base of saw cabinet with 4-in.-dia. outlet

## FENCE SHOULD BE EASY TO READ AND ADJUST

### READABILITY

**Some fences are easier to read than others.** The Align A Rip fence on the Woodtek and Bridgewood machines has a plastic magnifying lens that makes it easy to read the tape (below). The lens and the printed rule on the Jet SuperSaw (right) can be difficult to read from some angles.



### ADJUSTABILITY

**Three screws for the DeWalt.** The same three screws in the top of the DeWalt fence are used to set the fence square to the tabletop and parallel to the sawblade.



**The Delta Unifence is unique.** To adjust the Unifence square to the sawblade, you use the same wrench supplied with the saw for changing blades. The extruded-aluminum fence can be located in either a high or a low profile, to adjust for different ripping operations. Extruded flanges wrap around a flat metal bar that holds the fence tightly to either side of the main carriage to which it's attached.

## JET JWTS-10JF



The Jet was a good-quality machine with a reliable fence. There's a lot of attention to detail, but the machine is more expensive than most of the other saws.

<b>Street price</b>	\$899
<b>Motor</b>	1½ hp/18 amps at 120v
<b>Blade tilt</b>	Right
<b>Maximum rip capacity</b>	30 in.
<b>Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc</b>	0.002 in.
<b>Blade alignment</b>	0.004 in. out of parallel
<b>Dust collection</b>	Tray in base of saw cabinet with 4-in.-dia. outlet

position, which makes it easier to remove the fence and put it back on the rail.

Most of the fences can be adjusted to be brought parallel with the blade and square with the tabletop. The Delta Unifence is a real gem to adjust: The parallel adjustments on the front of the fence are made with nuts that are the same size as the arbor nut, so the right wrench is always handy. Adjustments to square the face to the table are made with a screwdriver. The Unifence is by far the most user-friendly for setup, and there is no need for a rail at the back of the saw because the fence rides smoothly on a nylon glide. The Unifence is also very versatile because you can configure it for a low profile to perform different ripping operations.

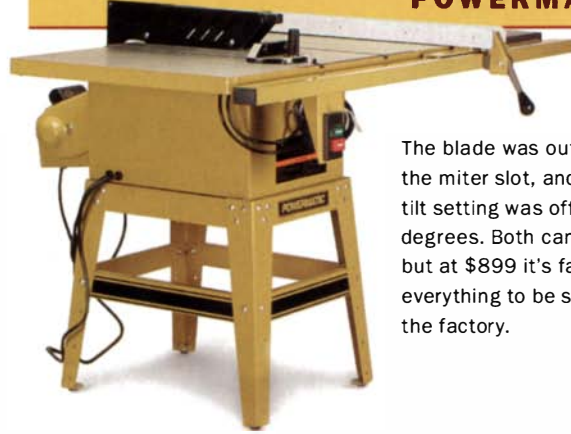
The fence on the Jet SuperSaw (JWSS-10LFR) contains elements of the Biesemeyer style with a few twists, such as a rubber thumb-wheel that operates on the front rail for finely tuning the fence setting. The rear support for the fence has a slot that fits over the edge of the back rail, eliminating any tip-up when locking the fence in place. The plastic sight for the tape measure has a small magnifying lens cast into it that made it difficult for me to read the tape.

The DeWalt fence utilizes a three-point clamping system at the front rail and a support rail at the back of the saw, which results in reliably parallel travel to the blade as the fence is moved. Setting the fence square to the table and parallel to the blade (and miter-gauge slots) requires loosening the same three screws, and it took several tries before I got it square and parallel; however, once set, the fence was stout and had no side deflection. The aluminum extrusion that makes up the face of the fence can be removed and switched to the opposite side of the main fence beam, much like the Delta Unifence. Overall, I liked the Unifence for its versatility and the General fence for its bricks-and-mortar simplicity.

### Motors rated 1½ hp to 2 hp are sufficient

I made test cuts with all of these saws using 3-ft. and 4-ft. lengths of 8/4 white oak and hard maple, and none of the saws disappointed

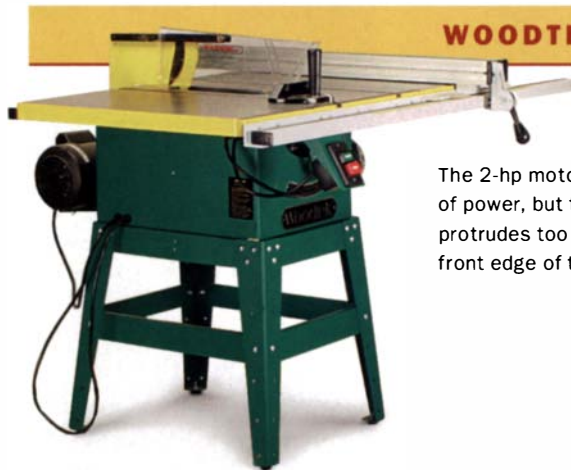
## POWERMATIC 64A



The blade was out of parallel with the miter slot, and the factory 45° tilt setting was off by several degrees. Both can be adjusted, but at \$899 it's fair to expect everything to be set accurately at the factory.

<b>Street price</b>	\$899
<b>Motor</b>	1½ hp/15 amps at 120v
<b>Blade tilt</b>	Left
<b>Maximum rip capacity</b>	30¾ in.
<b>Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc</b>	0.003 in.
<b>Blade alignment</b>	0.004 in. out of parallel
<b>Dust collection</b>	Tray in base of saw cabinet with 4-in.-dia. outlet

## WOODTEK TSC-B



The 2-hp motor offered plenty of power, but the switch mount protrudes too far out from the front edge of the saw table.

<b>Street price</b>	\$599
<b>Motor</b>	2 hp/24 amps at 120v
<b>Blade tilt</b>	Right (left also available)
<b>Maximum rip capacity</b>	32 in. actual (30 in. stated)
<b>Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc</b>	0.004 in.
<b>Blade alignment</b>	0.035 in. out of parallel
<b>Dust collection</b>	Tray in base of saw cabinet with 4-in.-dia. outlet

me. Four of them—the Bridgewood, Delta, Jet JWTS-10JF, and Powermatic—are powered by 1½-hp motors and cut through the hardwood with relative ease. With each machine, however, the feed rate was fairly slow. The Jet SuperSaw and the DeWalt have 1¼-hp motors, and I could feel the difference in power when compared with the 1½-hp machines. I was able to use a slightly faster feed rate, and the motors didn't bog down quite as quickly under load. The General, Grizzly, and Woodtek saws have 2-hp motors, and the increased power was even more obvious.

Keeping a sawblade spinning at full speed is critical to the oper-

## FEATURES TO CONSIDER

### SWITCHES



**This big switch is easy to find.** The DeWalt switch is conveniently located and easy to turn off with your knee if your hands are busy elsewhere.



**This switch gets in the way.** Switches on the Bridgewood and Woodtek saws project past the plane of the front rail of the fence, so they're easy to bump into.

### DUST COLLECTION

**A chute for directing sawdust.** The Delta saw has an angled pan that sends sawdust out the back of the machine, which, unfortunately, allows fine dust to escape and become airborne.



**An access door and a perforated tray.** The Jet SuperSaw has a fairly airtight base, accessed through a hinged door. Johnson thinks the tray with holes in it on the Jet SuperSaw will work well with fine sawdust, but he found that some dadoing and ripping operations will cause it to clog up.

ation of most sawblades. As the blade slows due to lack of power or a feed rate that's too fast, the teeth do not cut as efficiently, and excessive heat builds up at the rim of the blade. The heat causes the rim to expand slightly, forcing the blade to wobble, which can burn the wood and even damage the motor. Remedies for this problem are more horsepower, a blade with a thinner kerf, or simply raising the blade to increase the cutting angle.

### Switches should be easily accessible

I used to have an older version of the Delta contractor's saw that had a toggle switch located low on the front of the saw—placed there to prevent the user from turning it on unintentionally—but it was difficult to turn off the saw in a hurry. Manufacturers now make switches that are easy to use and logically placed—not only great for convenience but also for safety.

DeWalt's switch is large and well placed and can be shut down with your knee when both hands are needed elsewhere. The Jet SuperSaw has a push-button switch with an oversize off button and a location that makes it easy to use your knee to deactivate the saw. Delta's switch is well placed and can be pressed by hand or knee. The Jet JWTS-10JF, Powermatic, and General use identical push-button switches that are logically placed and easy to reach.

The Woodtek and Bridgewood use the same push-button switch as the Jet, Powermatic, General, and Grizzly, but it extends far enough out from the front rail that you can shut off the saw accidentally by leaning against the switch at the end of a ripcut.

### Left-tilting trunnions make most miter rips safer

Ripping miters on a table saw is the safest when performed with the sawblade tilted away from the fence. To make a miter ripcut on right-tilting saws, such as the Delta, the Grizzly, the Jet JWTS-10JF, and the Woodtek (which also offers a left-tilt version), the fence must be moved to the left of the sawblade, limiting the width of cut. A blade that tilts to the left eliminates this problem.

Stops for the tilt mechanism are adjustable on all of these saws. The stops positively locate 90° and 45° blade settings. Allen-head screws located in the tabletop make it easy to set the stops on the Delta and the DeWalt. Delta locates the screws in the tabletop, while DeWalt locates them in the miter-gauge slots.

### Dust collection is limited

Containing the dust on any contractor-style saw is difficult because the back of the saw cabinet is open to allow the drive belt and the tilt mechanism to function.

The Delta has a metal pan—part of the base support—that angles down toward the back of the saw, directing most of the sawdust into a pile behind the stand. This design makes it easier to sweep up the sawdust pile, but it does nothing to trap fine, airborne dust.

The Bridgewood, General, Grizzly, Jet JWTS-10JF, Powermatic, and Woodtek saws each has a plastic tray with a 4-in.-dia. outlet in the middle that covers the bottom of the saw cabinet. This system allows easy hookup to a dust-collection system, but because the back of the saw is still wide open, the dust collection is marginal.

Jet's SuperSaw has a steel tray in the bottom of the cabinet that is perforated to allow dust to be extracted from the cabinet through a 4-in.-dia. outlet. A plastic tray below the perforated tray acts as a catch-all and seals the system for dust extraction.

The blade shroud (below the table) on the DeWalt was effective at containing the dust around the blade, but the outlet has only a 2¼-in.-dia. opening and is immediately routed into a 90° elbow, which reduces the dust-collection efficiency. Also, the combination of a small outlet and a quick turn in the pipe can result in small offcuts plugging up the opening. The back and the bottom of the saw cabinet are open, so the blade shroud is responsible for all of the dust collection. The system probably would be more effective with a larger collection port.

### Guards and splitters could use some improvement

All of these saws come equipped with a splitter with anti-kickback pawls combined with a blade guard. These devices are mounted in one of two locations: on a bar off the back of the saw or onto a fitting right behind the blade, under the table insert. With most of these assemblies, you can fold the guard out of the way when you need to change the blade. The design of the Delta guard is slightly different. It has a notched section on the back of the clear plastic guard that is supposed to hook onto the metal splitter, but I couldn't get it to stay upright (useful if you wish to measure the blade height) without removing the table insert. The Powermatic has a design in which there are two independently pivoting guards on both sides of the blade. Those guards are held by a frame that sits above the splitter, and that frame is riveted to the splitter, so you cannot move the guards out of the way without removing the entire splitter assembly. The DeWalt has the most workable design of them all—a smaller assembly that mounts only to one location, into the trunnion right behind the sawblade. In the case of the DeWalt, smaller and simpler made it better.

### All of the saws performed acceptably

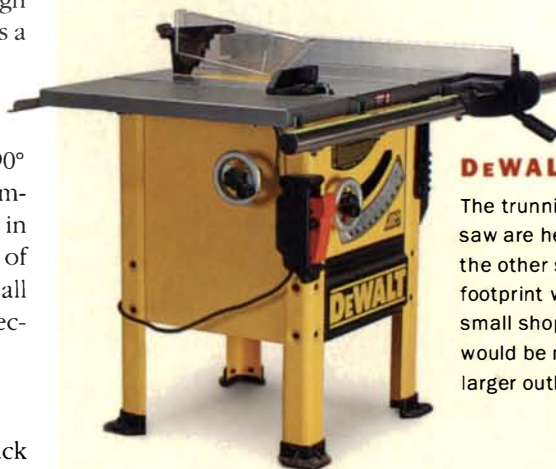
Any one of these saws would be welcome in my shop. But if I had to choose just one from this batch, it would be the General for a variety of reasons. It has plenty of power (with that 2-hp motor), a simple and reliable fence, and little things (such as the mounted hangers for the rip and crosscut fences) that suggest an attention to detail. And though it's not the least expensive, the price is well below that of many of the other machines.

As a second choice, I would pick the DeWalt because I really liked its heavier trunnions and arbor casting. If the dust collection were modified a bit, I could easily find a spot in my shop for that big yellow saw. □

*Roland Johnson builds custom cabinetry and architectural millwork in a shop near St. Cloud, Minn.*

## HYBRID SAWS

Hybrid saws are a cross between the older style contractor's saws and the heavier-duty standard cabinet saws. Design features on these two saws vary somewhat (see details below). For both the DeWalt and the Jet hybrid saws, you also can purchase sliding-table assemblies as optional accessories. Hybrids may represent the future direction of contractor-style saws.



### DEWALT DW746

The trunnions and arbor on this saw are heavier than those on the other saws. Its compact footprint would be nice for the small shop. Dust collection would be more effective with a larger outlet.

Street price	\$849
Motor	1¾ hp/15 amps at 120v
Blade tilt	Left
Maximum rip capacity	30¾ in.
Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc	0.003 in.
Blade alignment	0.000 in. out of parallel
Dust collection	Blade shroud in base of saw cabinet with attachment for 2¼-in.-dia. vacuum hose



### JET JWSS-10LFR

The saw is equipped with the same arbor and trunnions as the Jet contractor-style saw but with a new motor location and a great drive-belt system. The fence has a sight glass that is hard to read from some angles and a rubber thumbwheel for fine-tuning the fence setting.

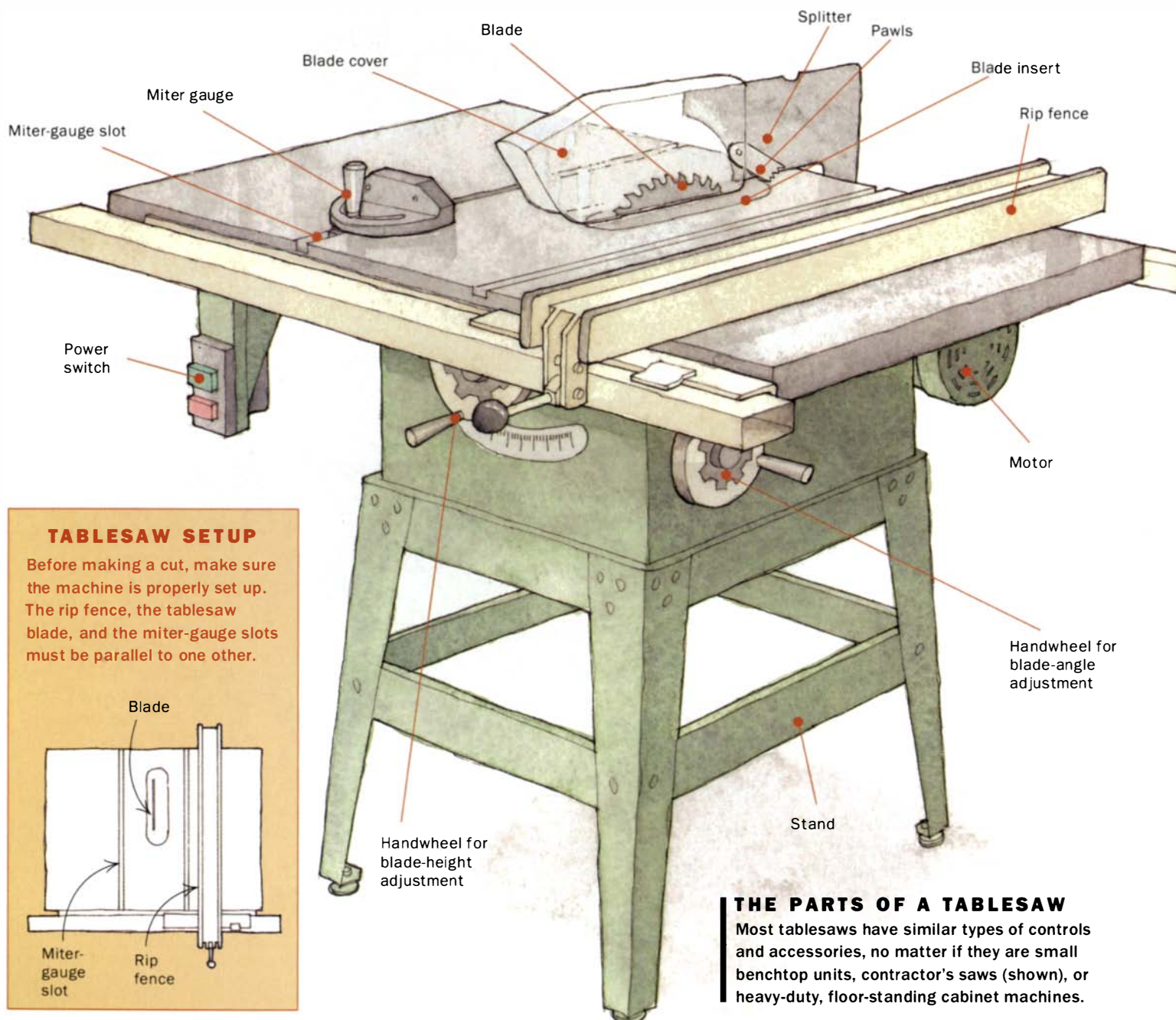
Street price	\$849
Motor	1¾ hp/12 amps at 120v
Blade tilt	Left
Maximum rip capacity	33 in.
Runout at rim of 10-in. testing disc	0.003 in.
Blade alignment	0.035 in. out of parallel
Dust collection	Collection tray in cabinet base with 4-in.-dia. outlet

# A Tablesaw Primer

## Ripping and Crosscutting

The proper techniques help ensure accurate and safe cuts

BY KELLY MEHLER





With its flat, circular spinning blade doing the hard work, the tablesaw can make all sorts of cuts, among them grooves, dadoes, rabbets, and a variety of other wood-working joints. However, the tablesaw most commonly is called upon to do just two basic tasks: make wide boards narrower, a process called ripping, and make long boards shorter, a process called crosscutting. When ripping, the rip fence is used to guide the stock. Crosscutting is done with the aid of the miter gauge.

Because so much tablesaw run time is spent ripping and crosscutting, it's especially important to have good work habits while making these two fundamental cuts. After all, when used properly, a good tablesaw can produce remarkably smooth and accurate cuts safely and with little effort.

### The saw must be set up properly for best results

A tablesaw won't cut easily, accurately, or safely if it's improperly set up. So before making any rip- or crosscut, make sure the saw is in good working order and properly adjusted. Also, the table of the saw should be flat, with any deviation limited to no more than 0.010 in. The same goes for any extension tables. And when assembled, those tables all should be flush.

Then, too, the sawblade should be sharp. A sharp combination blade can produce good cuts when ripping and crosscutting.

**Use the blade cover, splitter, and pawls**—The saw must have a blade guard that includes a cover, splitter, and pawls. Granted, such a guard system isn't a foolproof device, but it does improve safety. The cover itself acts as a barrier, helping to block any misdirected hand or finger from contacting the spinning blade. That's a big plus. Also, the splitter and pawls minimize the chance of kickback or ejection.

Kickback occurs most often during a ripcut, usually when the workpiece twists away from the rip fence just enough to contact the teeth on the back portion of the blade; those are the teeth just coming up through the insert after traveling under the saw. When that happens, those back teeth can grab the workpiece, lifting it and instantly launching it, usually right back at the operator. But a splitter behind the blade helps prevent the workpiece from contacting the back teeth, so kickback is less likely to happen.

Ejection occurs most often when ripping a relatively narrow piece, just after the sawblade cuts the piece free. At that point, if the piece should tip, twist, or bend, it can become pinched between the blade and the rip fence. And if the piece is not supported by a push block or pawls, the force of the spinning blade can send the piece straight back at warp speed. Indeed, I've seen photos of a 3/4-in.-square by 4-ft.-long piece that shot back 6 ft. and fully penetrated a sheet of 3/4-in.-thick plywood.

### Flat, square stock is a must

A warped board or a board with uneven edges can be difficult to control when ripping or crosscutting. Such boards are likely to rock during a cut. When that happens, the wood binds against the side of the blade. At best, you end up with a rough edge that isn't square. At worst, you get kickback or ejection (see the bottom left drawings on p. 58).

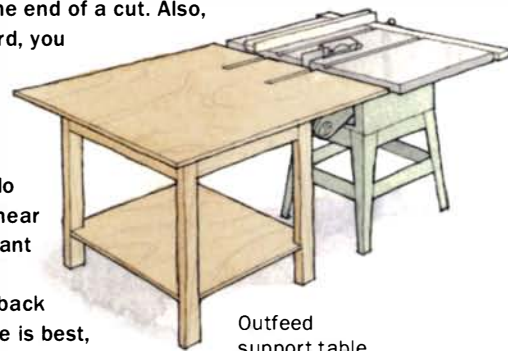
Before you make any tablesaw cuts, check that the face surfaces of the board are flat. Also, any edge that will meet the rip fence or

## Essential accessories

Tablesaws come from the factory with everything needed to start making ripcuts and crosscuts. But a few important accessories improve both the safety and accuracy of the saw.

### OUTFEED SUPPORT

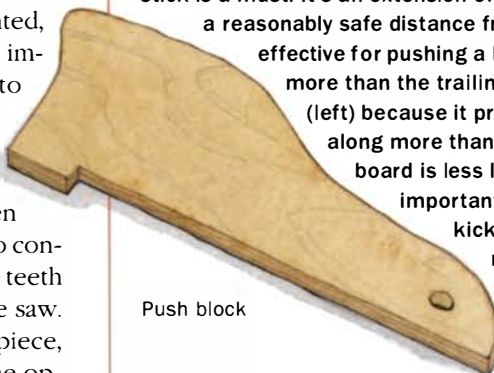
There's not much distance between the back of the blade and the back of the saw table. As a result, boards can end up falling off the back of the saw at the end of a cut. Also, when ripping a long board, you must bear down hard to prevent it from tipping off the back at the end of the cut. That's not something you want to do with your hand passing near the blade. So it's important to have some sort of auxiliary support at the back of the saw. A sturdy table is best, but even a support stand will help.



Outfeed support table

### PUSH BLOCKS

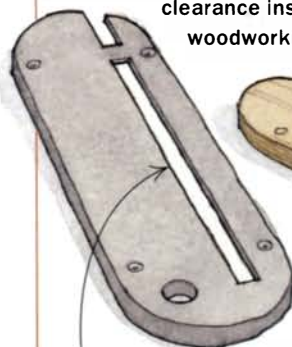
When making a ripcut 8 in. wide or less, a push block or push stick is a must. It's an extension of your hand, so your fingers stay a reasonably safe distance from the blade. A push stick is effective for pushing a board, but it holds down little more than the trailing end. I prefer a push block (left) because it provides downward pressure along more than just the end. That way, the board is less likely to flutter and, more important, is less susceptible to kickback. It takes just a few minutes to make a push block. Use any 3/4-in.- or 1-in.-thick stock and cut it to shape with a bandsaw or sabersaw.



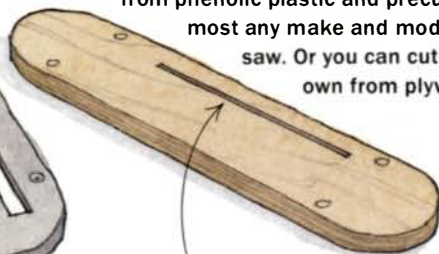
Push block

### ZERO-CLEARANCE INSERT

When a tablesaw comes from the factory, the blade insert typically has a wide opening. That's fine for bevel cuts or wide ripcuts. But for a narrow ripcut, the trailing end of the piece can drop down through the opening in the insert. As the piece tips, your pushing hand follows it. And you don't want your hand to drop toward a spinning sawblade. If that's not scary enough, you run the risk of kickback, too. To avoid those problems, I use a zero-clearance insert for almost all of my cuts. Most woodworking mail-order catalogs sell inserts made from phenolic plastic and precut to fit most any make and model of saw. Or you can cut your own from plywood.



The wide slot of a factory insert can trap thin stock.



The narrow slot of a zero-clearance insert is created by raising the blade through the insert.

## RIPPING

When making ripcuts, stand to the left of the blade with your left hip against the front rail.

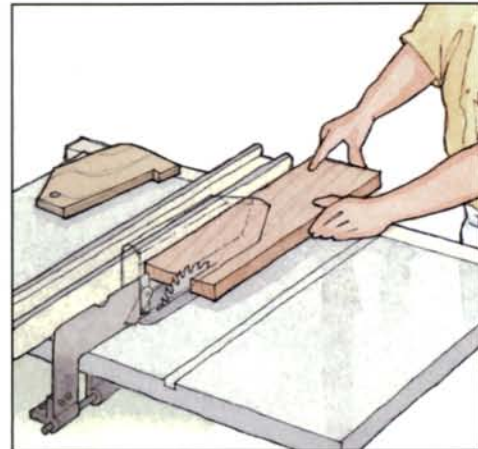
Feed the stock with your right hand, keeping your right arm in line with the board.

Keep the push block close at hand.

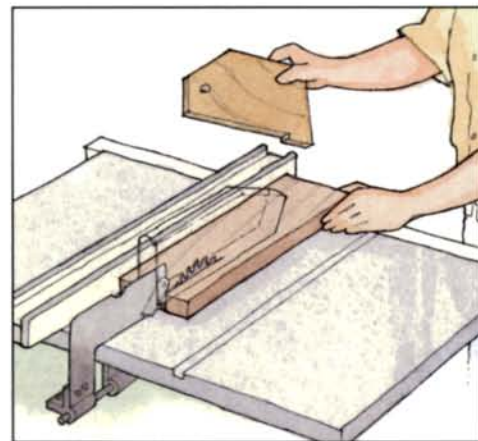
Apply enough downward pressure on your left hand to keep your palm anchored to the table. Then push with your middle finger and forefinger to keep the board against the fence. Once the end of the board has moved past your left hand, it is a good habit to remove that hand from the saw table.

## A SIMPLE RIPCUT

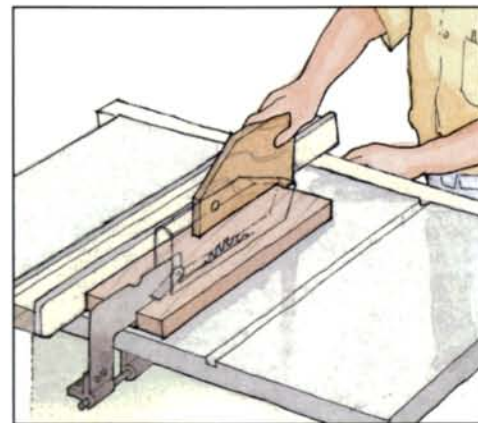
Most tablesaw accidents occur during ripping. By following a few basic techniques, you'll not only get good-quality cuts, but you'll also get them with a better degree of safety.



**1.** Place the front end of the board on the saw. Then, with the edge of the board against the rip fence, feed the board into the blade at a steady rate. If the motor slows down, slow the feed rate.



**2.** Once the trailing end of the board reaches the front of the table, use the push block to feed the board.

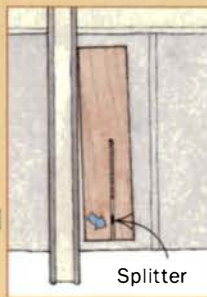
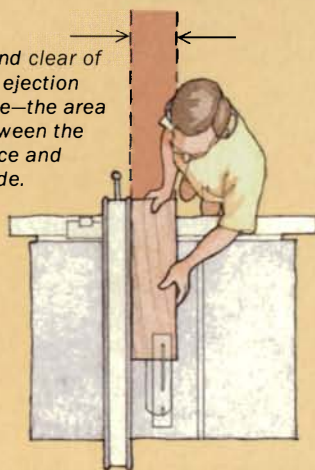


**3.** Continue pushing the trailing end of the board with the push block until the board is an inch or two past the sawblade.

## AVOIDING EJECTION AND KICKBACK

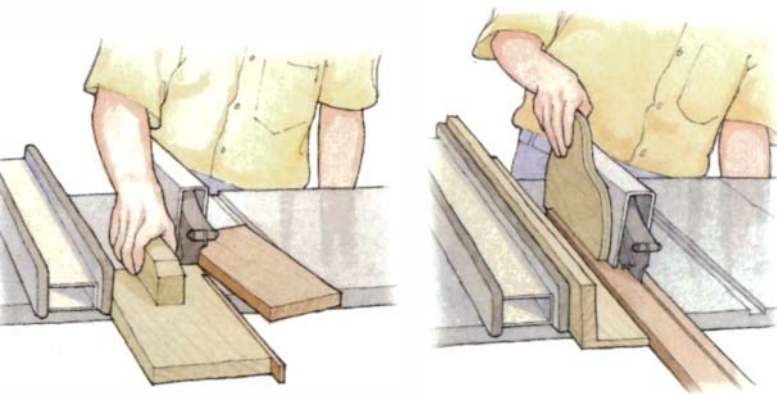
Ejection occurs when a cutoff piece gets pinched between the blade and the rip fence. If the piece isn't supported by a push block or paws, it can shoot straight back. Kickback occurs when a workpiece twists into the upward-spinning blade teeth. The teeth can launch the piece at your nose in an instant.

Stand clear of the ejection zone—the area between the fence and blade.



With a splitter behind the blade, kickback is less likely to occur because the workpiece can't easily contact the back teeth of the blade.

## RIPPING NARROW BOARDS



When ripping parts less than about 1½ in. wide, use a notched sled, guided by the rip fence, to push the stock through the blade. A handle makes for easier pushing.

A shopmade L-shaped fence mounted to the rip fence creates extra space between the blade cover and the rip fence, making it easier to feed the stock, especially when a tall push block is used.

the miter gauge must be straight. If the flat surface or straight edge is missing, the stock needs to be handplaned or jointed.

### How to avoid kickback or ejection while ripping

Smooth ripcuts can become routine if you follow a few basic cutting techniques. Not only will you get smooth ripcuts, but you'll also be able to get them with a better degree of safety. That's important, especially when you consider that most table-saw accidents occur during ripcuts. A safety point: Don't rip a board that is wider than it is long. With the shortest edge of the board bearing against the rip fence, the board easily can twist away from the fence and into the side of the blade, an invitation to kickback.

When you're faced with making a narrow ripcut, typically one that's between 1¼ in. wide and 3 in. wide, the blade cover usually ends up interfering with your right hand as you use the push block to feed the board through the blade. To avoid that problem, use a tall push block, which puts your hand well above the cover as the stock is pushed along.

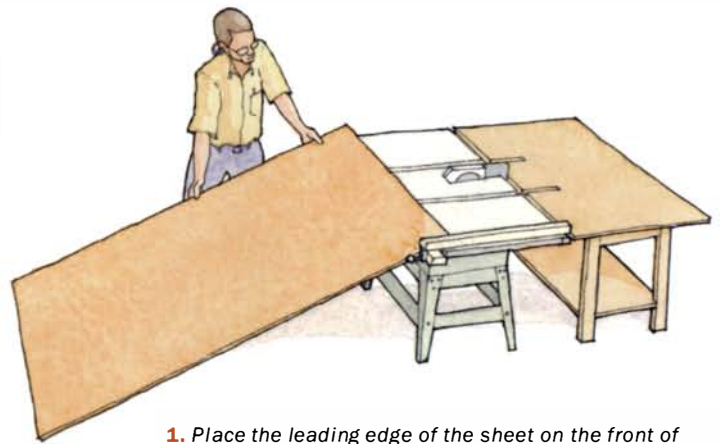
For the narrowest ripcuts, between ½ in. wide and 1¼ in. wide, use a notched sled when the stock is less than about 24 in. long (see the left drawing above). A handle on top helps you push the sled while making sure the edge of the sled stays against the rip fence. To set the width of the cut, simply measure the distance from the sled's inside edge to the sawblade's inside edge. For longer parts that require a narrow ripcut, clamp a short auxiliary fence to the rip fence (see the right drawing above). The short fence allows the stock to slide under the blade cover. However, when the front of the push block reaches the cover, you'll have to stop pushing and go to the back of the saw. The pawls will keep the stock in place. Once at the back, you can complete the final few inches of the cut by pulling the narrow piece through the blade.

### Use a firm grip while crosscutting

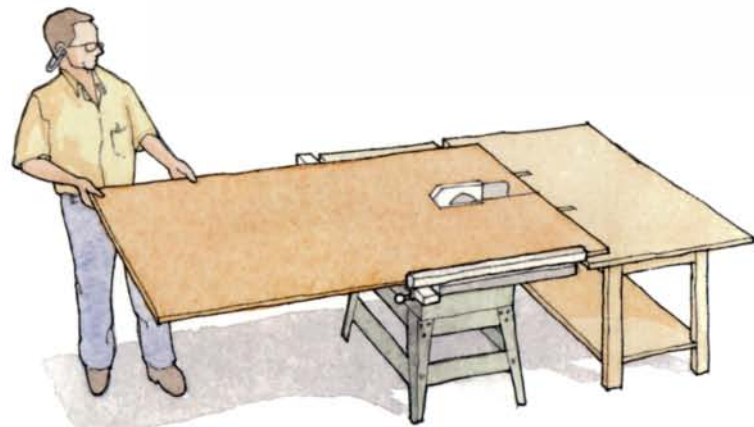
The most common crosscut is made with the miter gauge set at 90° to the miter-gauge slot, resulting in a square cut. However, consis-

## RIPPING LARGE PANELS

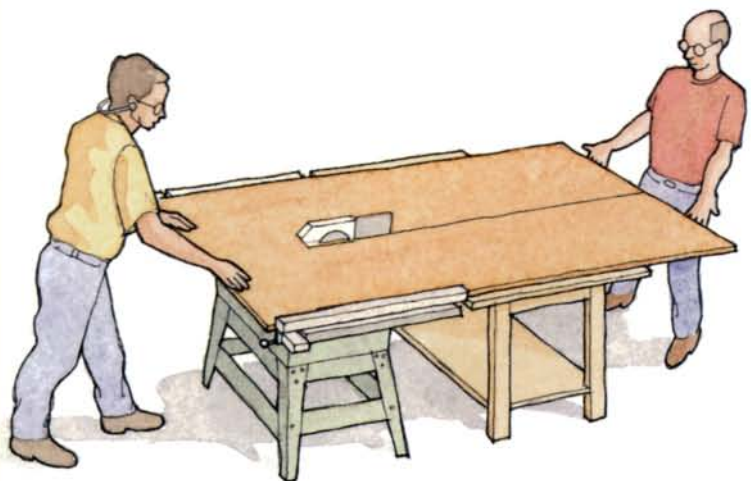
Full-size (4 ft. by 8 ft.) sheets of plywood and other sheet goods are heavy and awkward to handle, which make them a chore to cut. But with a little forethought and practice, the procedure can be reasonably straightforward.



1. Place the leading edge of the sheet on the front of the saw with the back end resting on the floor.



2. Stand at the left corner of the sheet with your body more alongside the left edge than the end. From that position it's easier to hold the edge of the sheet against the rip fence. When making the cut, both arms should be comfortably outstretched with your left arm along the left edge and your right arm on the end.



3. As you feed the sheet and begin to approach the front of the saw, shift your body more to the front of the sheet. Once at the front of the table, assume your normal starting stance to complete the cut. Have a helper support the end of the sheet.

## CROSSCUTTING

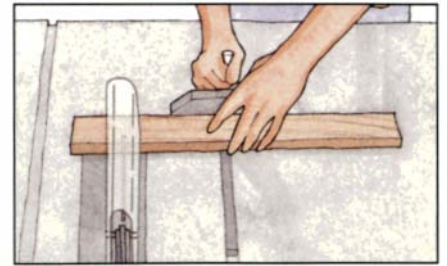
The starting position for a square crosscut is about the same as the one used for ripping. Stand in front of the miter gauge with your left hip against the front rail.

Use your right hand to push the gauge toward the back of the saw.

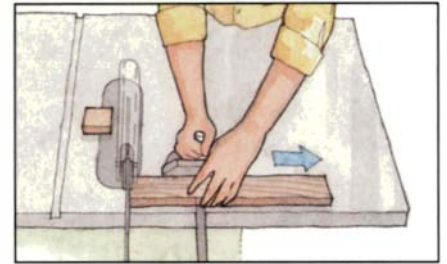
Hold the board against the miter-gauge fence with your left hand. For safety, keep fingers at least 6 in. from the blade cover.

The miter gauge works just as well in either of the two miter slots. But because most people are right-handed, the majority of tablesaw users push the miter gauge with their right hand, so the gauge has to go into the left slot.

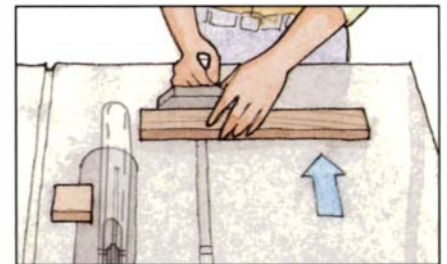
### A SIMPLE CROSSCUT



**1.** Keep the board away from the blade (an inch or two) before starting the saw. Push the miter gauge with your right hand, feeding the board at a steady speed. Stop pushing after the cut, but continue to hold the board against the fence.



**2.** To avoid having the spinning blade touch the cut edge of the board when the miter gauge is pulled back to the starting position, possibly causing a little extra splintering, it's best to shift the board away from the blade slightly.



**3.** While holding the board against the fence, pull both the board and the gauge back to the starting position. Then shut off the saw.

### USE AN AUXILIARY FENCE TO CROSSCUT LONG BOARDS

Kerf in fence can assist in aligning cuts.

Auxiliary fence

A typical miter-gauge fence is relatively short, so it doesn't offer a lot of support to long boards. An easy solution is to screw a long auxiliary wood fence to the miter-gauge fence. You can make the wood fence to any length, but just be sure it's flat and straight.

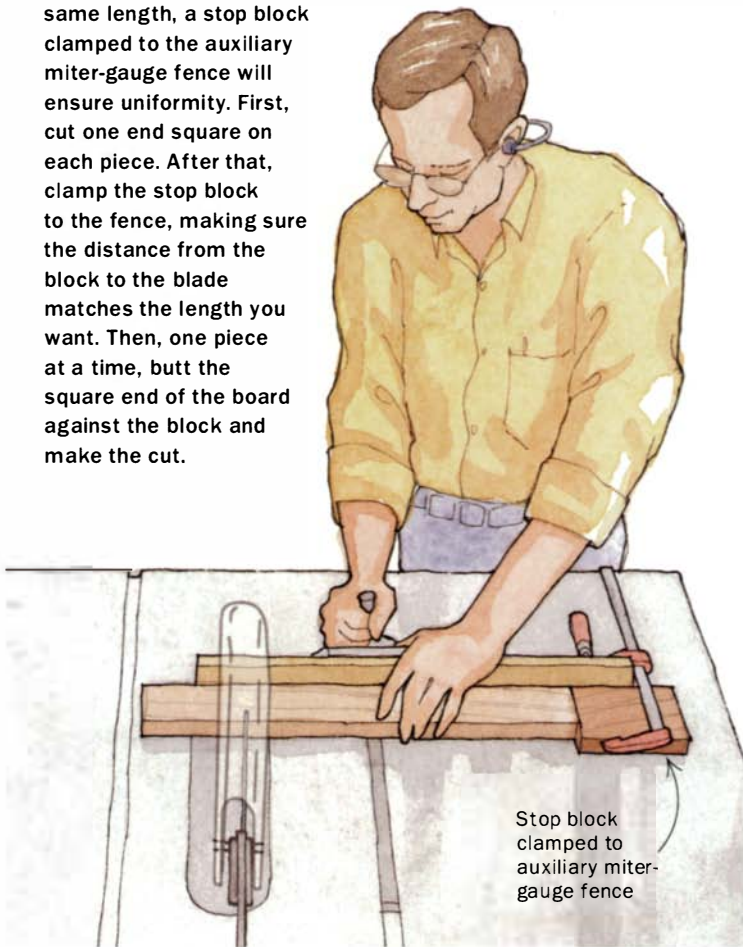
tently smooth, square crosscuts don't happen automatically. You need to follow a few basic procedures.

**Position the board on the miter gauge**—Place the board on the saw table. Use your left hand to hold the board against the miter-gauge fence and slide the gauge forward with your right hand until the leading edge of the board almost touches the blade. At this point, use one or two hands as needed to align the saw-blade with the cut line on the board.

**Push the board through the blade**—When everything is aligned, use your left hand to hold the board firmly against the miter-gauge fence until the cut is completed. The holding force you apply should be straight back, and your fingers should be at least 6 in. from the blade cover. Slide the board an inch or two away

## REPEAT CUTS FOR LONG PARTS

When you're cutting several boards to the same length, a stop block clamped to the auxiliary miter-gauge fence will ensure uniformity. First, cut one end square on each piece. After that, clamp the stop block to the fence, making sure the distance from the block to the blade equals the length you want. Then, one piece at a time, butt the square end of the board against the block and make the cut.



from the blade before starting the saw. Use your right hand to push the gauge toward the back of the saw, and feed the board at a steady speed. Stop pushing once the cut is finished, but continue to hold the board firmly against the miter-gauge fence.

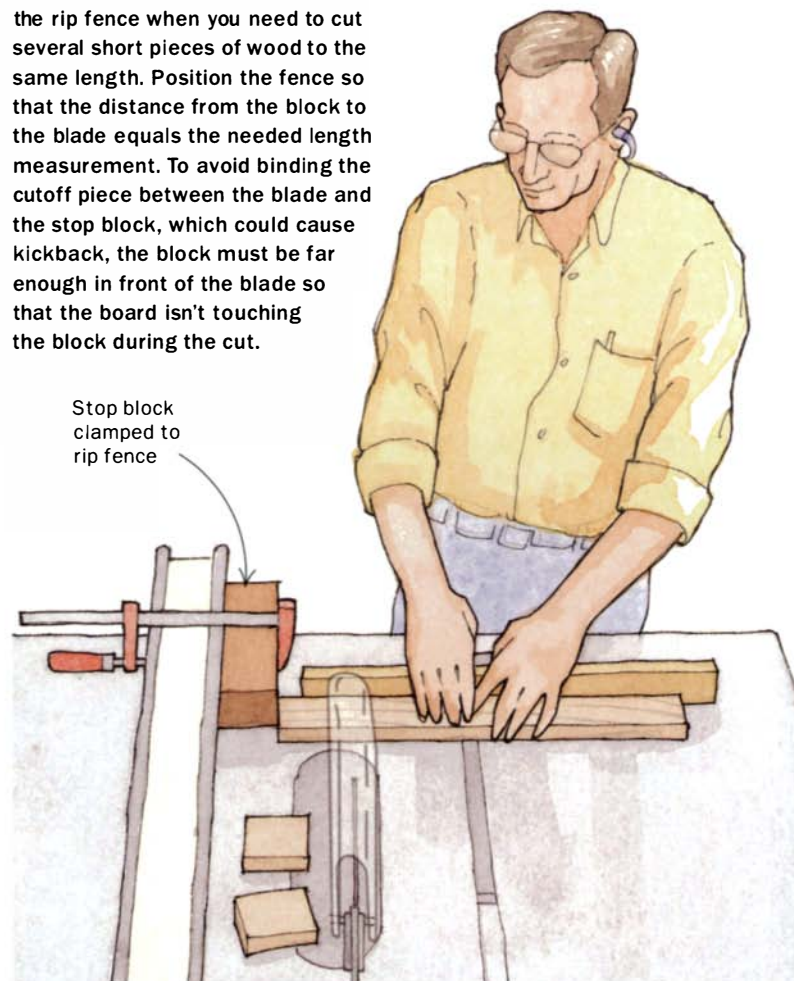
**Pull back the board**—Once the board has been cut, continue to hold the board firmly against the fence, and pull both the board and the gauge back to the starting position. Once back to the starting point, you can relax your hold on the board and shut off the saw.

Oftentimes, as the board and miter gauge are pulled back, the spinning blade will slightly touch the cut edge of the board and cause a little extra splintering. To avoid the problem—and if the board is small and light enough—I'll use my left hand to shift the board  $\frac{1}{8}$  in. to  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. away from the blade before pulling it back. Bigger and heavier boards, however, won't move as easily. So if I'm cutting a big board while in splinter-phobic mode, I simply shut off the saw before removing the board and pulling back the gauge.

**Add a stop block to the rip fence when cutting several short pieces to the same length**—It's not uncommon to need several short pieces of wood, each

## REPEAT CUTS FOR SHORT PARTS

To save time, clamp a stop block to the rip fence when you need to cut several short pieces of wood to the same length. Position the fence so that the distance from the block to the blade equals the needed length measurement. To avoid binding the cutoff piece between the blade and the stop block, which could cause kickback, the block must be far enough in front of the blade so that the board isn't touching the block during the cut.



one the same length. When that's the case, I clamp a stop block to the rip fence. Then the fence is positioned so that the distance from the block to the blade equals the length measurement you need. To avoid kickback, the block must be far enough from the blade so that the board isn't touching the block when it starts being cut by the blade.

**Add a stop block to the auxiliary miter-gauge fence when cutting longer boards to the same length**—Make sure the distance from the block to the blade matches the length you want. First, though, using only the auxiliary fence, cut one end of each board square. Then butt the square end of each board against the block and cut one piece at a time.

Another versatile jig that gets a lot of use in my shop is the crosscut sled (to see the sled in use, go to [www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops](http://www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops)). The sled makes crosscutting even more accurate and safe.

Once you've mastered the basic techniques of ripping and crosscutting, you'll be ready to tackle the other various tasks suitable for the table saw, such as cutting miters, tenons, and tapers. □

### Watch it on the Web

To see a video on using a table saw crosscut sled, go to [www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops](http://www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops).

*Kelly Mehler is the author of The Table Saw Book (The Taunton Press, 2002).*

# Protecting Surfaces in the

Machines, jigs, and benches all benefit from being sealed and waxed

BY CHRIS A. MINICK

We go to great lengths to protect the projects that leave our workshops from the rigors of everyday use, yet we often neglect our jigs, fixtures, shop cabinets, workbenches, and tools—the very objects that allow us to create fine furniture in the first place. There's no need to French-polish your crosscut sled, but there are treatments that will make your jigs, benches, and machine tops work better and last longer.

## Prevent rust on machine surfaces

Bare metal will rust if not protected or used constantly. There are myriad products that purport to be the last word on metal protection. Each product claims to prevent rust and to leave a slick surface that will not contaminate wood. The ones I've tried have done neither, and I'm leery of applying oil to my saw top or jointer bed. As a consequence, I've adopted my own system for cleaning and protecting metal that works and doesn't require much effort.

I remove the rust by buffing the surface

## WAX FOR MACHINE SURFACES

*A green pot-scrubbing pad mounted to the hook-and-loop base of a random-orbit sander (left) removes rust and tarnish from machine beds. Kitchen waxed paper (below) can be used to protect and lubricate a machine bed. Simply crumple up the paper and rub it over the surface (right) to lay on a thin layer of wax.*



# Shop

with a green pot-scrubbing pad. Small items such as planes, chisels, or scrapers are buffed by hand, but large surfaces like my tablesaw or jointer get power-buffed with a 5-in. random-orbit sander. The hook-and-loop sanding pad holds the scrubber firmly while I guide it around the metal surface. Once it's rust-free, I polish the surface with a wadded-up piece of waxed paper. Just enough wax (carnauba, I've been told) transfers to the metal surface to protect it from rusting and to lubricate it simultaneously. Boards glide across the saw or the jointer as if they are floating on air.

High-pressure laminate requires virtually no maintenance and is the ideal surface for router tables, shop-cabinet tops, chopsaw extensions, and the like. Dried glue and finish easily scrape off, and a quick rub-down with waxed paper keeps the laminate slick.

## Finishes help jigs last longer

It may seem unnecessary to finish jigs, but there are several good reasons to put in the

## FINISHES FOR JIGS



### ▲ SHELLAC

Shellac not only seals and lubricates, but it's also the best finish for reducing seasonal movement in solid wood.

### ◀ WAX

The plywood parts of jigs need only a coat of paste wax to protect them from dirt and glue drips. The wax also helps jigs slide during use.



### ◀ GLUE SIZE

The edges of MDF are far more absorbent than the compressed faces. PVA glue diluted with water (called glue size) seals the edges, after which the whole jig can receive a coat of shellac.



**SACRIFICIAL SURFACE**

*Benchtops made from sheet goods are best protected with a sacrificial top of hardboard, which can be replaced easily when it gets worn out (left). Use the old surface as a template to mark the outline on the new top (below).*



of the jig and allows it to glide across a tablesaw easily.

**Paste wax for plywood**—Plywood and tempered hardboard remain dimensionally stable over wide humidity swings, so they are ideal materials for your most critical jigs. Often a coat of furniture paste wax is all the protection needed for jigs made from these stable materials. The paste wax also helps the jig slide more easily during use.

**Glue size seals MDF**—Medium-density fiberboard (MDF) is less seasonally stable than other manmade sheet goods, but it still can be used for jig construction if properly sealed. The edges of an MDF sheet are considerably more absorbent than the faces. If left unfinished, the unprotected edges can absorb moisture and significantly swell the MDF sheet. A coat or two of finish will not seal the edges adequately, so instead I use glue size—a 50-50 mixture of polyvinyl-acetate (PVA) glue and water. Allow the glue size to dry completely, lightly sand the rough surface, then finish the whole jig with shellac or

effort. Even simple jigs help us hold, saw, or bore wood precisely. The usefulness of most jigs depends on their accuracy, and they require a fair amount of time and effort to construct, so it makes sense to protect them properly. The type of finish depends on how the jig is used and the material it is made from.

**Shellac on solid wood**—Finishing jigs with shellac virtually eliminates dimensional changes in solid wood caused by

seasonal humidity. Shellac has the lowest moisture-vapor transmission rate of any finish on the market today. That means the moisture content of wood finished with a few coats of shellac will barely change, even if the level of humidity in the shop varies significantly.

I prefer dewaxed shellac to finish furniture, but for jigs I use the hardware-store variety of premixed orange shellac. That cloudy stuff in the can is natural shellac wax, which lubricates the sliding surfaces



## A RENEWABLE FINISH THAT SEALS AND PROTECTS



**Scrape first.** On a used bench, scrape away any dried glue before applying a new coat of the wipe-on finish.



**Mix the finish.** Minick's mixture of oil, varnish, and paint thinner contains a higher proportion of resin than most Danish oils to give the bench greater protection.

**Lay it on heavy.** Apply the oil-varnish mixture liberally and allow it to soak in for 10 minutes before wiping off the surplus with a clean cloth.

lacquer. This will provide an effective moisture barrier.

**Hold the varnish**—For finishing jigs, I prefer shellac or cabinet-grade nitrocellulose lacquer, which dry much faster than oil-based varnish and are available in convenient aerosol cans. More important, shellac and lacquer form harder surface films than varnish, which means that jigs coated with these finishes slide more easily over a tablesaw or router table than their varnish-coated cousins.

### Benchtops need protection, too

When it comes to finishing a workbench, I find that woodworkers fall into two camps: Some lavish as much attention on finishing

their bench as they would a dining-room table, while others consider any finish to be a waste of time. I fall somewhere in the middle, applying a finish more for protection than for the look it imparts.

Benchtops take plenty of abuse, so an easily renewable finish is in order. My home-brewed wipe-on finish dries fast and gives plenty of protection. Mix 1 cup oil-based polyurethane brushing varnish with ½ cup mineral spirits, then add about 2 oz. boiled linseed oil. Adjust the mixture with mineral spirits for proper wiping consistency, and then apply it like any other wipe-on finish. It will dry to the touch in about one hour. Three coats on a new workbench will resist water better than standard Danish oil; it's a good idea to ap-

ply an additional coat or two once a year to maintain this protection.

My shop cabinets are varnished inside and out, so they don't need much attention; however, they still get dings and scratches. Every couple of years, I vacuum off the dust and wipe on my home brew, which makes them look almost as good as new.

If your benchtop is made from layers of plywood or MDF, a better form of protection is to use a sacrificial surface. My benchtop is covered with ¼-in.-thick hardboard held in place with double-faced carpet tape. When the top gets too dinged to be usable, I pry up the old piece and replace it with fresh hardboard. □

*Chris A. Minick is a consulting editor.*

# Make a Wooden Scraper

This shopmade cabinet scraper will tame the most difficult woods

BY STEPHEN SHEPHERD

Scrapers are among the most useful of all the hand tools in a woodworker's arsenal. Properly sharpened and burnished, a scraper will remove a fine shaving on even the gnarliest wood, leaving the surface with a depth and sheen that you can't achieve with sandpaper. When viewed under magnification, a scraped surface appears crisp, and the pores are clean and free of debris.

Cabinet scrapers offer advantages over the familiar, flat-metal hand scrapers (also called card scrapers). As with a handplane, the fixed relationship of

the blade to the sole produces a uniform depth of cut, which you can vary by deflecting the blade with a thumbscrew. The sole also bridges low spots rather than following the contours of the surface as a hand scraper does. Last, the cabinet scraper's outswept handles provide more leverage for aggressive cuts while insulating the user from the heat produced by the scraping action.


All cabinet scrapers vibrate and chatter when the cut is too aggressive or the blade is dull, but metal-bodied cabinet scrapers chatter more because the metal surfaces have no dampening effect on vibration. A shopmade wooden cabinet scraper, on the other hand, chatters less, is more sensitive to the wood surface and can be

customized for applications such as smoothing chair seats and rungs.

## Three main parts form the scraper

Before preparing the wood for the scraper, determine the width of the blade. You can buy replacement blades for the Stanley or Kunz metal scrapers that are 2¾ in. wide. For this scraper, I used a 1¾-in.-long section from the end of a 2½-in.-wide Sandvik hand scraper. Cut the scraper with a hacksaw or tin snips, then file the edge smooth.

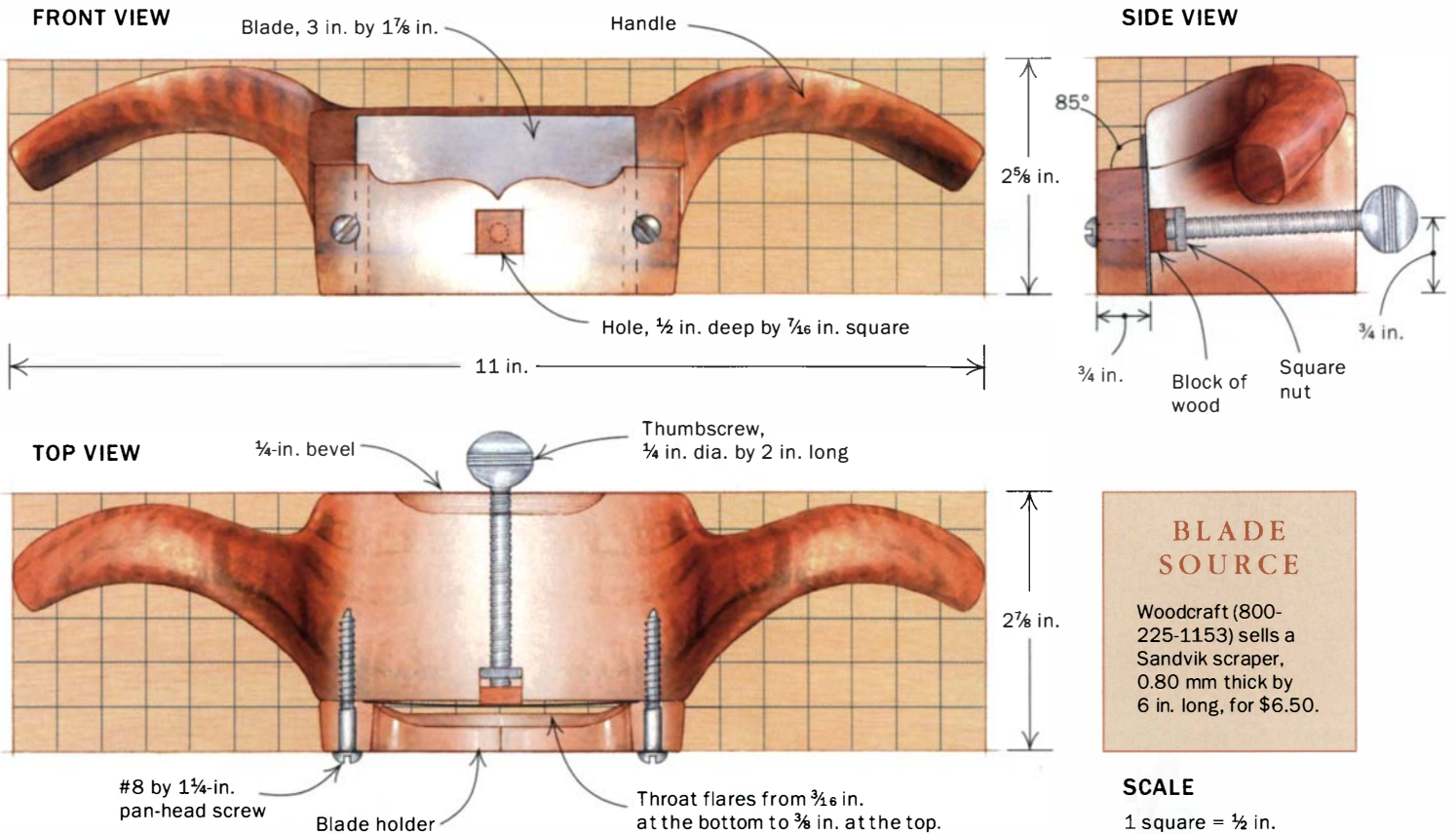
**Shape the body first**—This design is modeled after an early 19th-century exam-



**A cut above.** A wooden cabinet scraper is superior to its metal cousin for its ability to handle figured boards.

## THREE VIEWS OF A WOODEN SCRAPER

These illustrations show a 3-in.-wide blade. Scale the width of your design to reflect the actual width of the blade you use.



## CUT THE BODY ON THE BANDSAW

A large block of wood is used for the body of the scraper. Typically, a smooth-wearing hardwood, such as maple or beech, is used, but historic examples include walnut burl, rosewood and ebony.

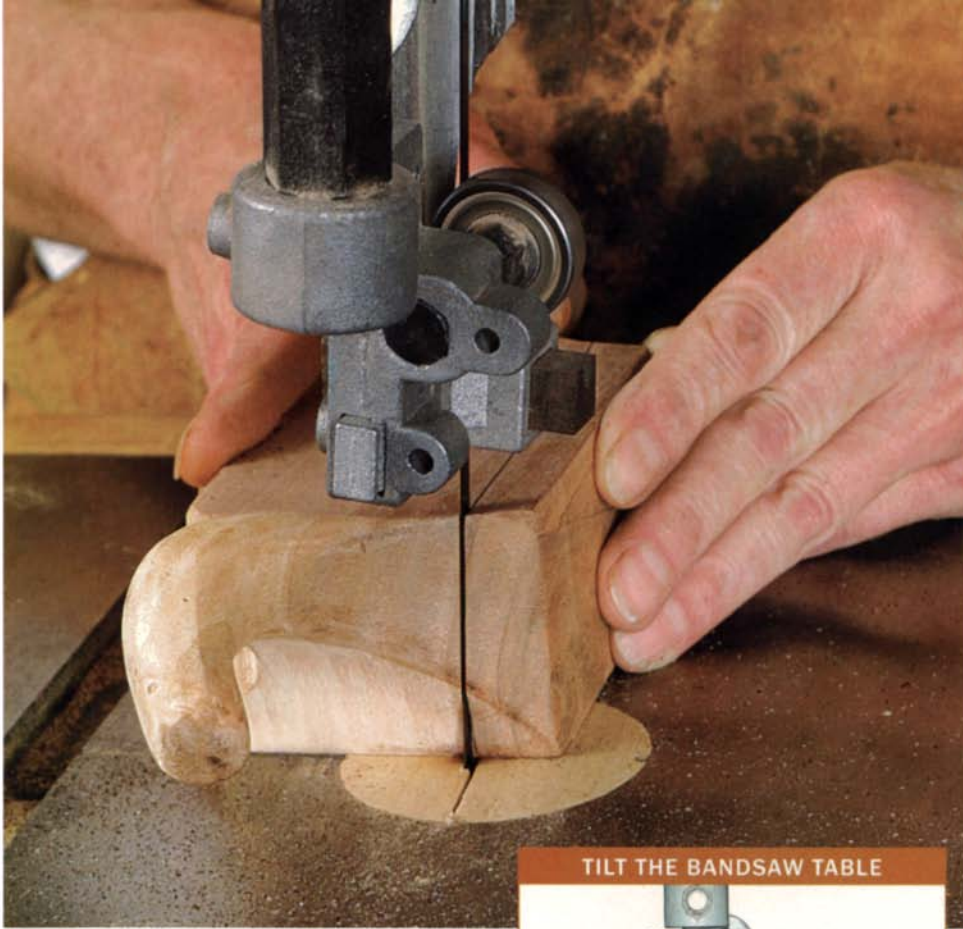


**Transfer the image to the block.** Use the top and front profile templates to draw the outline of the scraper on adjacent sides of the wooden block.



**Cut and shape the handles.** After cutting out the top profile on the bandsaw, tape the waste pieces back on to give support while you cut the front profile (left). Use a spokeshave followed by a file and a cabinet scraper to shape and smooth the two handles (above).

## CUT THE BLADE HOLDER FROM THE BODY



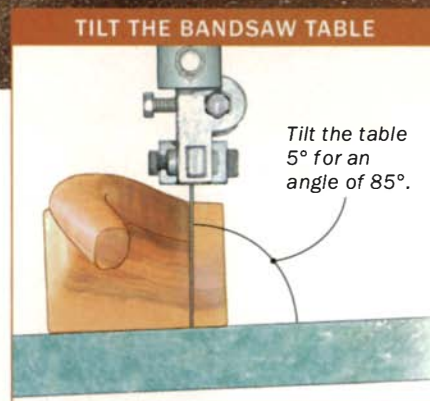
**Make the blade holder.** Tilt the bandsaw table 5° and cut off the front of the scraper to form the blade holder.

ple. The body of the cabinet scraper is made of a hard, smooth-wearing wood such as maple or beech, although historic examples include walnut burl, rosewood and ebony.

Start with a piece of wood about 2½ in. wide by 3 in. high and 8 in. longer than the width of your blade. Smooth one wide face with a handplane to form the sole of the scraper. Flip over the block to lay out the handles on the top, then lay out the front profile on an adjacent face. The handles on this scraper taper slightly toward the ends, but you may prefer another handle style. Feel free to mock up different shapes to see which feels best for you.

Cut out the top profile with a fine-tooth bowsaw or bandsaw. Then tape the waste pieces back in place to add support for cutting the front profile. Use a spokeshave to shape the handles, which can be either round or oval. The oval shape, with its longer axis parallel to the sole of the scraper, seems to afford more control.

Make an 85° cut on the front of the block (see the left photo above). You can use either a bandsaw with the table tilted



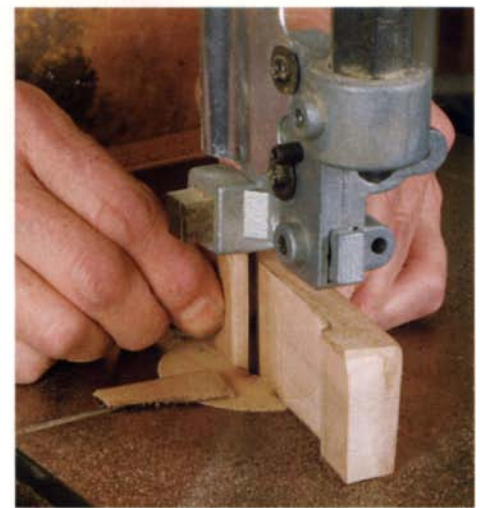
5° (see the drawing above) or a handsaw. Flatten the cut surface with a handplane.

**Now form the blade holder**—The wood blade holder secures the blade tightly to the block at an 85° angle. The holder is made from the cutoff piece sawn from the block used to make the body of the scraper. First use a handplane to smooth the cut side of the block. Then cut off a ⅝-in. piece from the top edge to ease the ejection of shavings.

Center the blade squarely across the blade-holder blank and score the edges with a marking knife. Then draw two more lines parallel to and ⅛ in. inside these marks. These secondary lines define the throat of the blade holder. Saw out the throat cavity on the bandsaw, then smooth the surface with a file. Flare the throat opening from about ⅜ in. at the bottom to about ⅝ in. at



**Fit the blade to its holder.** After marking the width of the blade on the blade holder, draw another pair of lines ⅛ in. inside to outline the throat opening.



**Cut the throat.** Use a bandsaw to cut the throat on the blade holder. The opening should be wider at the top of the holder.



**Drill the hole.** With the 85° bevel side of the scraper body facing down, use a drill press to make the hole for the thumbscrew.

the top to prevent shavings from becoming trapped in the throat.

Saw a shallow cut along the two lines marking the edge of the blade, then use a chisel to pare the  $\frac{1}{8}$ -in. shoulders. The shoulders hold the blade against the body of the cabinet scraper and allow it to flex when you advance the thumbscrew against the back of the blade. Cut the shoulders slightly shallower than the thickness of the blade; if they are too deep, the blade will slip. If you do cut them too deep, plane the wood outside the shoulders.

I use pan-head sheet-metal screws to attach the blade holder to the body. Make the clearance holes in the blade holder just large enough for the screws to pass through; otherwise, the blade holder may slip out of position during use. Drill corresponding pilot holes in the body, but don't make these holes too tight or you might split the wood when you drive the screws. Now, install the blade holder and, if necessary, plane the bottom edge flush with the sole of the scraper body.

**Install the thumbscrew**—This design calls for a thumbscrew that allows you to adjust the depth of cut.

Make a clearance hole for the thumbscrew, with the  $85^\circ$  bevel down so that the hole exits  $90^\circ$  to the blade (see the bottom right photo on the facing page). Locate the hole so that the tip of the screw contacts the blade in the center of the throat about  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. up from the sole.

Although a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -in.-dia. by  $2\frac{1}{2}$ -in.-long thumbscrew would be ideal, the longest I can find is 2 in. Because of the short length of the screw, you'll need to chisel a square recess around the hole on the blade side. Inset a square nut and then install a small block of wood that relays the pressure from the thumbscrew to the blade.

**Sand and finish the scraper**—Once the construction has been completed, disassemble the cabinet scraper and smooth all of the surfaces. I finish my scrapers with a few coats of boiled linseed oil and a little beeswax rubbed onto the sole to make the tool work smoothly. After an initial wear-in period, the sole becomes “smack smooth” and requires no further wax. □

*Stephen Shepherd is a conservator and a tool and furniture maker who lives in Salt Lake City. You can visit his Web site at [www.ilovewood.com](http://www.ilovewood.com).*

## Using the scraper

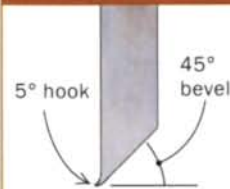
**A sharp, properly burnished blade is the key to excellent scraping performance.**

**The blade of a cabinet scraper is traditionally sharpened at an angle of  $45^\circ$  or more; but the burr is burnished over in a similar manner. File the edge of the blade to  $45^\circ$  with a fine mill file and then burnish over the edge  $5^\circ$  to  $10^\circ$  with a burnisher or hardened screwdriver shank.**

**Setting up the blade is easy: Install it loosely in the blade holder and set the scraper on a flat workbench, with the edge of**



EDGE DETAIL



**Getting an edge.** After creating a burr, turn it back with a screwdriver held  $5^\circ$  to  $10^\circ$  off the vertical.



**Install the blade.** Set the cabinet scraper on a flat surface and insert the blade flush with the bottom. Tighten the blade-holding screws (left). Turning the thumbscrew pushes the blade outward and, because of the  $85^\circ$  angle to the vertical, downward at the same time (above).

**the blade resting on the surface of the bench. Tighten the two blade-holder screws and then run in the thumbscrew until it barely begins to bow the center of the blade outward.**

**To use the scraper, grasp the handles in the palms of your hands, with the blade facing away from you and with your thumbs and forefingers comfortably positioned on the curves where the handles meet the scraper body.**

**Rest the scraper on your workpiece, with the body of the tool skewed about  $10^\circ$  to  $15^\circ$  to the grain direction. If all's well, a firm push should send a fine shaving floating from the throat of the scraper. If the cut seems too thick, back off the thumbscrew a bit and try again. Keep an eye on the shavings. When they start to break up or resemble dust, it's time to sharpen the blade.**

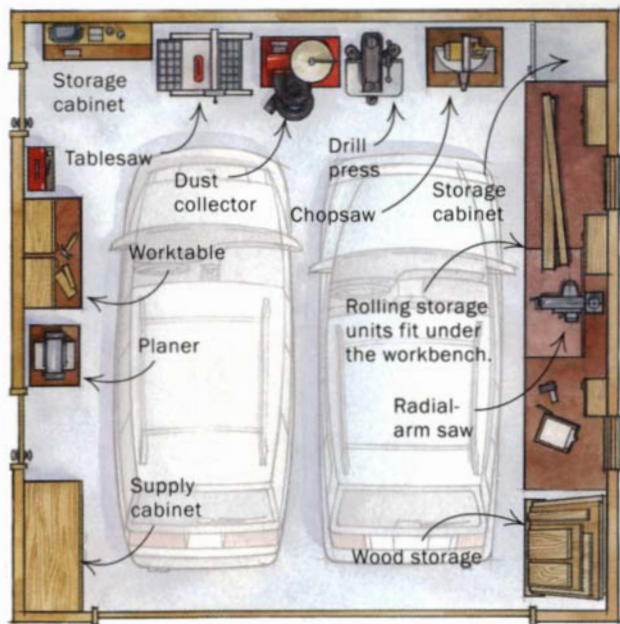


**Scrape both ways.** You can push or pull the scraper, depending on the grain of the wood and what feels comfortable.

# Roll-Away



With wheel-mounted tools and cabinets, a two-car garage easily transforms into a versatile workshop



## TWO CARS AND A WORKBENCH

The 23-ft. square space is a workshop by day and a garage by night. A long workbench spanning one wall houses a series of multipurpose rolling cabinets used for storage and as tool stands, worksurfaces, and infeed and outfeed tables.

After many years living in central Florida, I received an invitation to relocate to Tucson, Ariz. Having been an active woodworker for 18 years, I placed adequate shop space high on my list when it came time to buy a home. While it would have been nice to find a house with a separate workshop, my wife and I settled on one with a spacious 23-ft. by 23-ft. two-car garage.

This presented me with a challenge: create an efficient and comfortable workshop that could accommodate big projects but still make room for the family cars. So I began laying out the basic requirements needed to share my tablesaw with my parking space.

The primary requirement was to keep at least one car in the garage at night, even if a half-finished project occupied floor space. The flexibility to park two vehicles in the garage on occasion also was essential. The challenge was balancing these requirements with the elements of a good shop: one that is attractive to work in, easy to clean, and has plenty of organized storage. My philosophy throughout was “a place for everything, and everything in its place.”

## Making due with limited space

To have plenty of workspace and be able to cut long boards with my radial-arm saw, I knew I would build a long workbench along one of the garage walls. I began sketching idea after idea, looking for inspiration in books, magazines, and on TV woodworking shows.

While paging through magazines, I came upon an article for a

# Workshop

BY BILL ENDRESS

roll-around tool-storage cabinet designed to be tucked under one wing of a tablesaw. It dawned on me that I could use a similar concept to save space in my garage. Beneath the workbench I could house roll-around cabinets to store tools.

The more I thought about it, the more advantages I could see of this system. With the rolling cabinets built to well-planned heights, they could serve as infeed and outfeed supports for the tablesaw, planer, and miter saw. Work areas also could be adapted to accommodate different projects just by rearranging the rolling cabinets.

## Workbench serves as a garage for rolling cabinets

Constructing the main workbench was the first task. Because of space limitations, I decided to build it in two sections and bolt

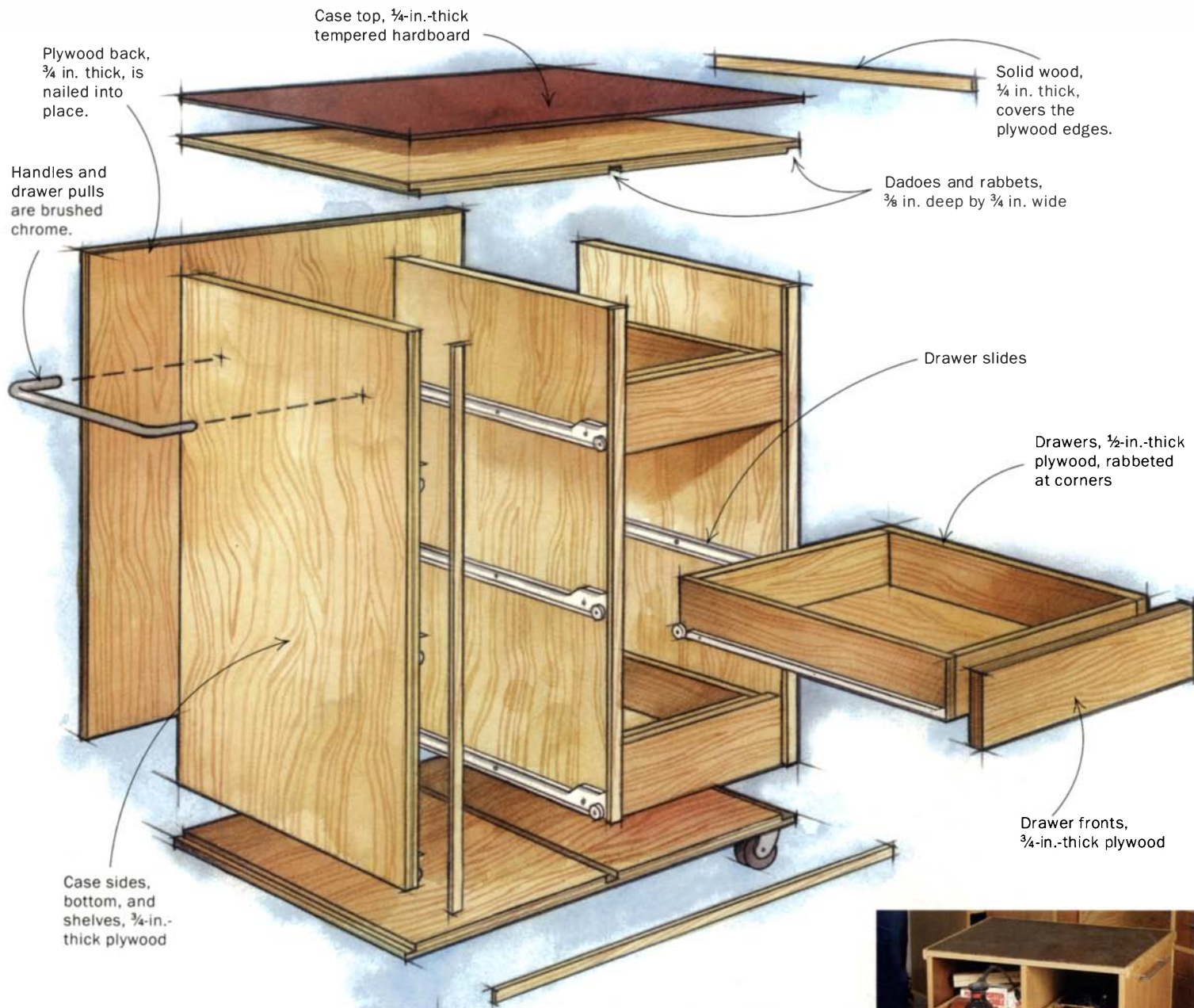
them together. One section is 8 ft. long, and the other is 6 ft. long. After some measuring of tables and kitchen cabinets, I determined that a worksurface 30 in. deep and 37 in. high would be most comfortable. The workbench was fortified with a 2x4 frame to support the substantial weight of the radial-arm saw. I also installed two electrical-outlet strips on the bench, one on each side of the saw. They're mounted along the front edge to keep power-tool cords from extending across the top of the worksurface.

## Cabinets are built for mixing and matching

It was both fun and challenging to design and build the cabinets. Once I knew the workbench measurements, it was easy to back out the dimensions for the rolling cabinets. To keep it simple, the



# BASIC CONSTRUCTION OF ROLLING CABINETS



Each rolling cabinet has the same overall dimensions: 26 in. deep by 22 in. wide by 32½ in. high (the chopsaw, planer, and scrollsaw cabinets are shorter but follow a similar construction method). Locking swivel casters account for 3 in. of the height. The basic construction allows for variations in the placement of drawers and shelves. Each cabinet is constructed from 3/4-in.-thick plywood and finished with two coats of water-based varnish.

## Configure the cabinet for various uses

While confined to set dimensions, Endress designed the rolling cabinets with various arrangements of shelves and drawers so that each one serves a different purpose.



**Sliding shelves store power tools visibly and in reach.** Endress built two of these cabinets—one with a left-facing handle, the other with a right-facing handle—to form a large surface when side by side.



cabinets follow the same basic design but are configured differently, according to their functions.

Some cabinets have drawers, some have shelves, and some are built to hold large power tools. All of the cabinets roll on swivel casters. Handles are attached to the cabinet faces so that they can be maneuvered around the garage. The handles, drawer pulls, and cabinet-door handles are all matching brushed chrome, giving the final profile of the workbench a handsome look.

**Storage cabinets double as workspaces**—The cabinet used for storing power tools has six sliding shelves that pull out to the left for storing sanders, a jigsaw, and other tools. A second cabinet is built in a mirror image with shelves that pull out to the right. By butting these two cabinets together, a continuous work surface is created while leaving the shelves accessible.

A third rolling cabinet has five drawers to hold hand tools. A shelf underneath the top of the cabinet is open on three sides, providing a place to set tools and keep them out of the way. The opening also is useful for clamping workpieces to the tabletop, as clamp heads can be tightened against the top's overhang.

The fourth rolling cabinet simply has two shelves that are accessible from three sides. One shelf holds two toolboxes, and the other holds my bench grinder and a small belt sander.

The height of the cabinets is consistent and makes them ideal to serve as infeed and outfeed tables for my miter saw, planer, and tablesaw (see the photo on p. 71).

**Stationary tools get wheels, too**—The first four cabinets provide adequate storage for my hand tools. But I also needed storage for my assortment of power tools.

The scrollsaw fits below the workbench, sitting on a low, rolling cabinet. While it seems quite short at first glance, the cabinet is just the right height to use the saw while sitting comfortably in a chair.

The router-table cabinet also is on wheels. The table is equipped with a router lift. The lift is offset from the center of the work surface, leaving room for drawers on one side of the cabinet to hold

router bits, collet wrenches, and a laminate trimmer. Two more drawers below the router are large enough to hold another router, associated tools, and auxiliary baseplates.

Following the same design, I built rolling cabinets to hold my planer, miter saw, and tablesaw. Rather than getting stored out of sight, these cabinets fit along the walls of my shop and can be moved easily. The cabinets for these tools also have plenty of storage for any accessories.

**Dust collection is easy to incorporate**—The only tool in the shop that doesn't have dust collection built into its cabinet is the miter saw. Try as I might, I haven't come up with a good dust-collection system that allows me to store the cabinet against the wall. When using this tool, I usually set it up by the garage door so that the dust generated is thrown outside the shop.

To keep the shop clean, I settled on a 1-hp mobile dust collector that can be attached to one tool at a time, and it has been adequate so far.

**Wheels roll in any direction and lock securely**—I used four 3-in. locking swivel casters (available at hardware stores) on each rolling cabinet, which enables them to move in any direction.

When all four wheels are locked, the cabinet becomes a stable platform. Unfortunately, due primarily to its weight, moving and locking my tablesaw into place on its low cabinet was a struggle. It always seemed to go in the opposite direction I wanted it to go. On a whim, I decided to try higher-quality, heavy-duty casters from Woodcraft Supply Corp. ([www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)). What a difference quality makes! Not only can I move my saw with little effort, but the locking mechanism also is much easier to operate.

### Wall cabinets reduce clutter

After taking up as much space as I could afford on the ground, I looked to the walls for more storage. I designed the wall cabinets to accommodate my work habits. I did not want deep cabinets, as things tend to get shoved to the back and become lost. I wanted



**Shallow drawers hold hand tools.** An open area below the top of the cabinet keeps tools within reach but out of the way. The cabinet's top has enough overhang for attaching clamps.



**There's no such thing as too much storage.** Two tall, open shelves are used for storing large objects such as a toolbox, benchtop grinder, and belt sander.



**Scrollsaw sits at a comfortable height.** The scrollsaw is mounted to this low rolling cabinet so that it can fit below the workbench when not in use. However, it's just the right height to use while sitting comfortably in a chair.



**Router table holds parts and accessories.** This rolling router table is equipped with a router lift. The lift is offset to accommodate drawers, bits, and accessories. Dust-collection ports are built into the fence and cabinet back.

## Mobile tools and cabinets improve workflow

With the cabinets and tool stands built to corresponding heights, they can be arranged for use in a variety of combinations. The four-station arrangement shown here will accommodate a workflow that includes

benchtop planing (1), ripping on the tablesaw (2), crosscutting on the miter saw (3), and routing at the router table (4). After an operation has been completed at one station, the outfeed table is rolled to the next station, where it becomes the infeed table.



Watch it  
on the Web

To see the roll-away workshop in use, go to [www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops](http://www.finewoodworking.com/toolsandshops).

my cabinets just deep enough to hold racks of storage bins. I also did not want them so high that a ladder would be necessary to access the top shelves. This led to a final dimension of 8 in. by 30 in. by 30 in. for a double wide cabinet, and 8 in. by 15 in. by 30 in. for a single wide cabinet.

### Cars and projects live in harmony

When I first came up with the idea of a small garage shop based on a mobile storage concept, I wondered how it would work out. After using the shop for more than a year, I continue to be amazed at how easy and how much fun it is to work here. All of my requirements were met, including the ability to park two vehicles in the garage when the shop is not in use.

As with any shop, there are lessons learned for building the next one. In hindsight, it would have been a good idea to plumb the workbench for dust collection and compressed air. But overall I am quite pleased with the current mix of rolling cabinets. If I do add new tools to my shop, I'll build rolling cabinets designed specifically for them. □

*Bill Endress is an aerospace engineer in Tucson, Ariz. In his spare time, he works wood in his two-car garage.*



**1 Room for rough cutting.** Endress starts his workflow by milling boards at the thickness planer. Rolling cabinets support the stock on its way in and out of the planer and can be moved to support boards of various lengths.



**2 Support for long or wide stock.** The planer outfeed table becomes the infeed saw. A second cabinet catches the board on its way out.



**3 Instant miter-saw station.** Like the other power tools in this shop, the miter saw is built on a rolling cabinet designed so that the saw-cutting work-surface is level with the tops of the other cabinets.



**4 Comfortable routing station.** After transporting a stack of freshly crosscut material from the miter saw, Endress goes to work at the router table.



# A Clever Tool Case

Built-in stands keep  
an essential tool kit  
at the ready

BY YEUNG CHAN

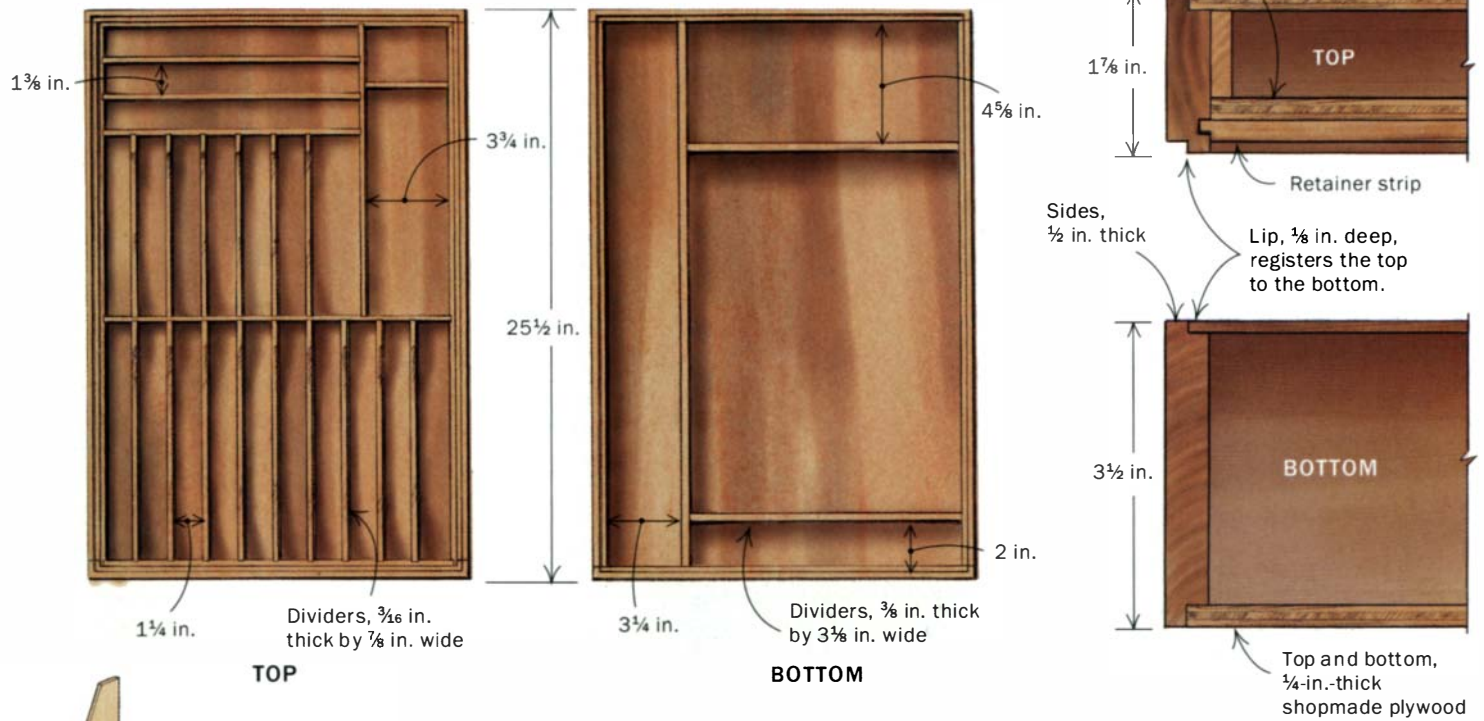
Starting when I was a boy in China, making hand tools became second nature to me. Most of the hand tools I use today are ones I have made. My tools are the extensions of my hands, helping me work faster, safer, and with better results. So I treat them with care, keeping them sharp and well-tuned.

It's not a good idea to store cutting tools in a box without separating each one; tools hitting one another will cause

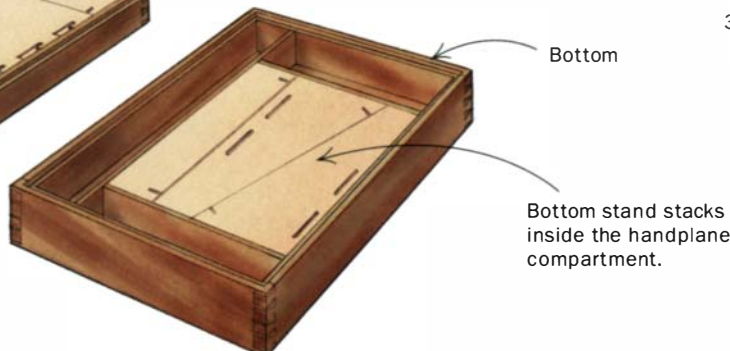
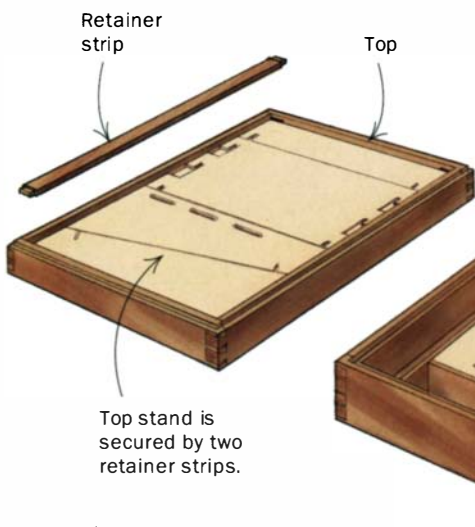
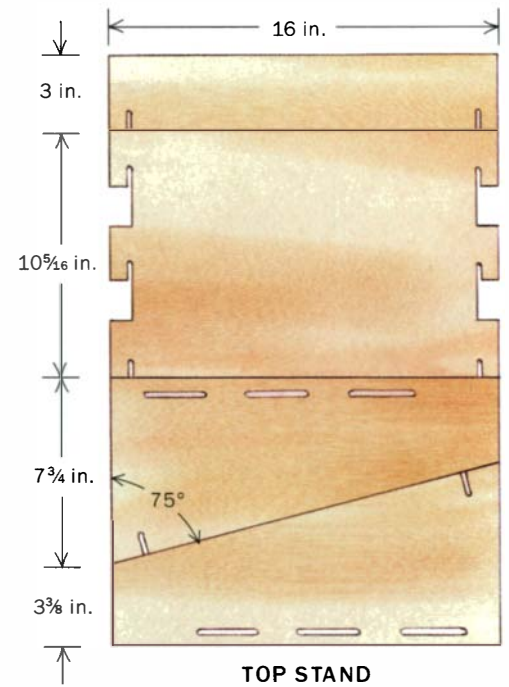
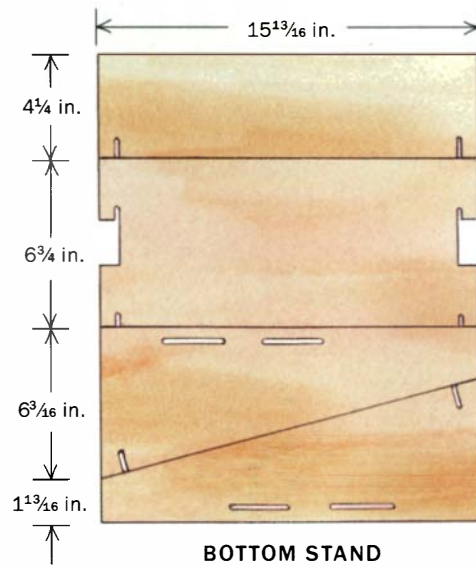
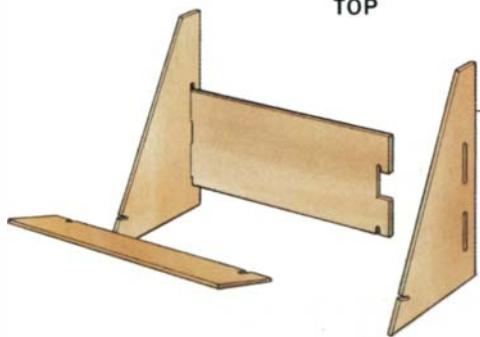
damage and dull the cutting edges. When I went into business as a furniture maker, my first solution for tool storage was a large tool board mounted on the shop wall. However, I soon found that I needed my tools with me when I did installation jobs. And I began to take on a busy teaching schedule, giving classes, seminars, and demos in many different places. It became a big job to remove all of the tools from the tool board and arrange them in

# BOX LAYOUT AND CONSTRUCTION

The top section of the box holds chisels, gouges, knives, spokeshaves, and marking gauges. The bottom section holds handplanes, sharpening stones, saws, a hand drill, and a pencil box.



## RETAINER PANELS ARE ALSO KNOCKDOWN STANDS



good order for travel (not to mention putting them all back on the wall afterward).

So I made a toolbox with the following mission in mind: to carry and protect an essential group of hand tools, big enough to handle most situations but not too heavy to carry. My toolbox may be small, but it's efficient.

To keep the tools from tumbling out when the box is closed, I made a retainer panel from ¼-in.-thick Baltic birch

plywood for each half of the box. Originally, I was planning on just a simple rectangle of plywood for each side, but then I had another idea: Cut each rectangle in a certain way, and it could form a knockdown stand for its box. To prevent the plywood parts from falling off when the lid is turned upside down, I use two wood retainer strips with a small tenon on each end. The tenons fit into small mortises on the box wall. The strips are bowed

slightly so that they put pressure on the middle.

I used plywood for the top and bottom of the toolbox, as I usually do for boxes, allowing me to glue it into its rabbet and strengthen the case. To make the plywood, I glued ¼-in.-thick shop-cut veneer onto a ½-in.-thick core.

Two straps hold the case together. I decided against hinges because the weight of each box would rip them off the thin walls. Plus, I like having the two

parts separate because I can put them where I need them.

I was very happy that the idea worked perfectly: The tools stay in place when the box is closed, and the two halves stand up side by side, good for use in the shop or in the classroom. When I give seminars and demos, my handmade tool kit becomes an exhibit, always generating lots of interest and questions. □

*Yeung Chan is a woodworker and teacher in Millbrae, Calif.*

## The case for handmade tools

Like many children in poor countries, I made my own toys—model planes, boats, wooden trucks. There weren't many tools around, and in any case, I had no money to buy them. Often the only tool I used was a pocketknife. But I found out in practice that the quality of the steel was poor. Sometime later I found a broken hacksaw blade. I remember thinking that if this saw could cut metal, it must be very hard, good for making a knife. I ground off the saw teeth, sharpened the edge on the sidewalk, and then mounted it in a handle. This hacksaw-blade knife became my first handmade tool, and I was very satisfied with it.

After making this small knife, I made many other tools—for marking, cutting, and carving—all from high-speed-steel sawblades. Over the years I have made many improvements, both in the shapes and sizes of the blades and the handles, not to mention the quality of the tool steel. Now that I have a motorized grinder and fine stones, the grinding process is faster and easier.

Furniture makers often encounter difficult situations that could be solved easily with the right tool. One of the options is to modify an existing tool; a better way is to create and make one that is perfect for the job.

There are many advantages to starting from scratch: You can choose the steel, design the perfect blade shape for the task, and make a custom handle with your favorite wood, contoured to fit your own hand. My wooden spokeshaves are simple in construction with just a body and a blade—

much lighter and smaller than metal ones. I designed my dovetail chisels with a low angle on both sides of the blade to fit into very narrow sockets when fitting fine dovetails. My wooden block plane fits my hand comfortably and is small and lightweight—great for final detail work. And when I could not find a chisel plane that I liked, I made my own out of bronze, which can be adjusted precisely with the turn of a screw. With comfortable handles fitted to my hand, these tools can be used continuously without muscle fatigue.

If you take the plunge and start making your own tools, after some time you will own a collection of beautiful custom tools that suit your hands and your style of work.

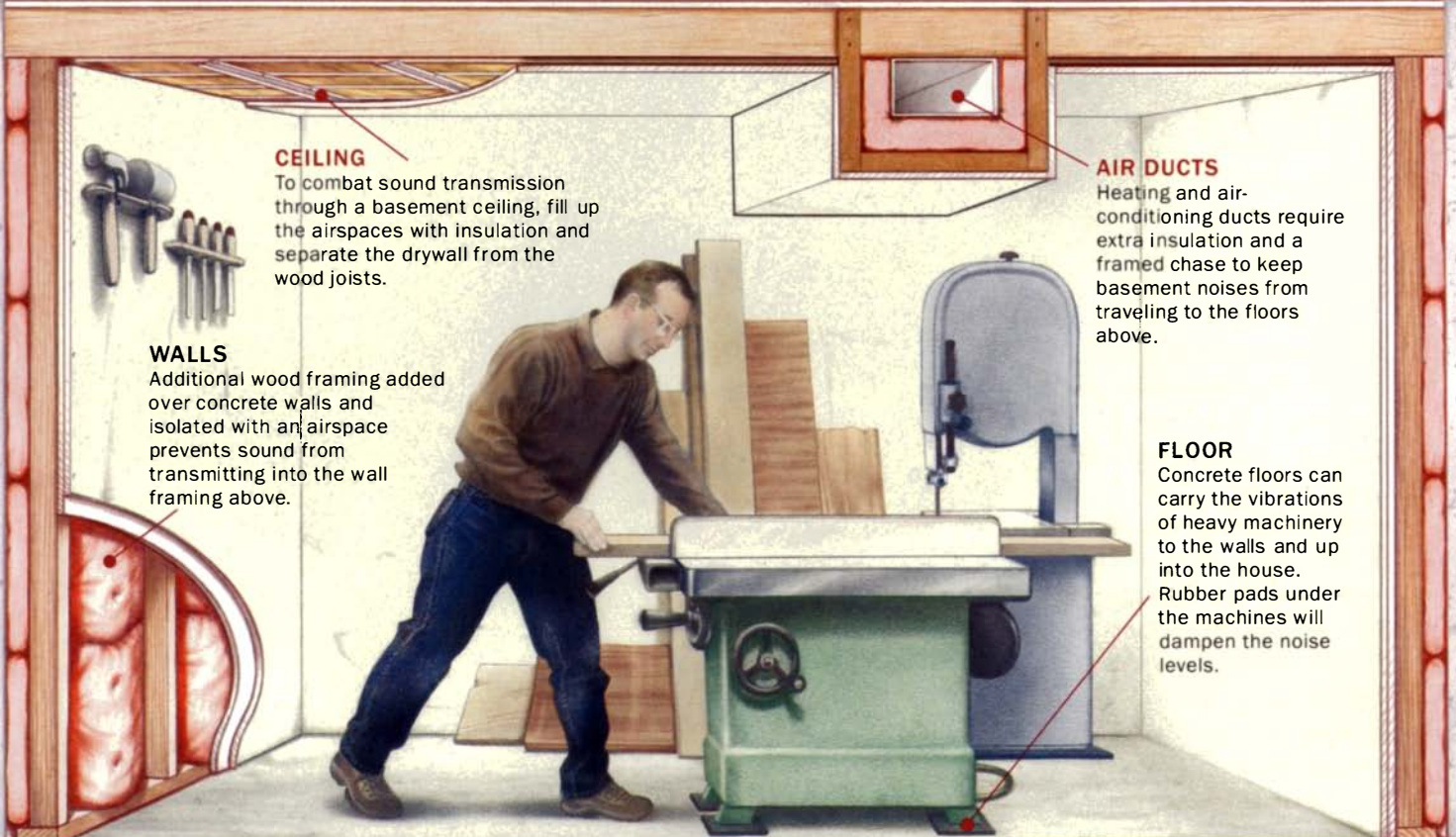
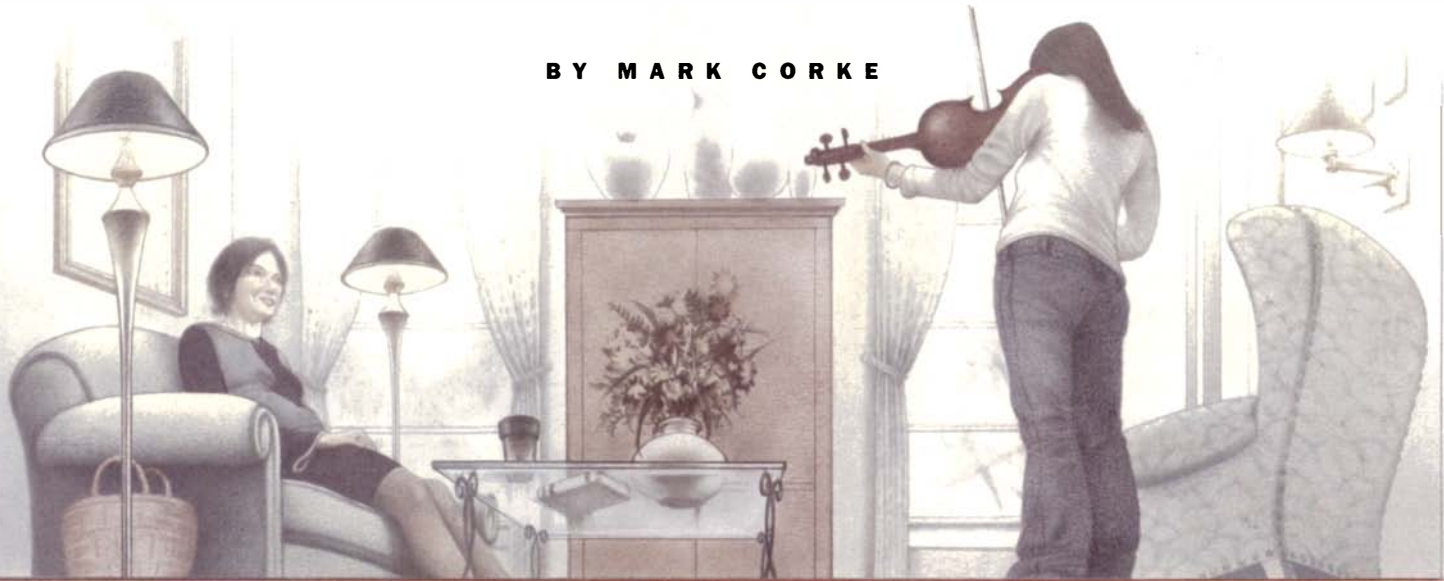


**Handmade tool collection.** Chan designs each of his tools to improve on others he has used and to suit his way of working.

# Soundproof a Basement Shop

Two-pronged attack arrests both airborne and vibratory noises

BY MARK CORKE



## CEILING

To combat sound transmission through a basement ceiling, fill up the airspaces with insulation and separate the drywall from the wood joists.

## WALLS

Additional wood framing added over concrete walls and isolated with an airspace prevents sound from transmitting into the wall framing above.

## AIR DUCTS

Heating and air-conditioning ducts require extra insulation and a framed chase to keep basement noises from traveling to the floors above.

## FLOOR

Concrete floors can carry the vibrations of heavy machinery to the walls and up into the house. Rubber pads under the machines will dampen the noise levels.

**B**asement shops often are not ideal, but their proximity to the amenities of the house makes a good deal of sense. For instance, alterations to wiring can be accommodated more easily and inexpensively than in a stand-alone workshop. My basement shop is large, 30 ft. by 50 ft., but interrupted by support columns and stairs up to the first floor of the house. Because of the shop's proximity to my family upstairs, my main concern was reducing the noise levels of machinery and tools.

Researching the best way to tackle noise reduction can be daunting. I came across conflicting advice, much of it from manufacturers claiming the superiority of their products. To cut to the chase, I called my friend Terry Phillips, a sound architect I worked with at the BBC in Great Britain. Who better to help me find the solutions than someone who designs radio studios?

I learned there were two types of sounds that I had to deal with: airborne and vibratory. When a large woodworking machine is fired up, most of the noise that's heard is in the form of sound waves transmitted through the air by the motor, bearings, and cutters. Each of these components trans-

## FLOOR

### DAMPEN VIBRATION



*A rubber doormat sliced into small pads and placed under the feet of a machine can significantly reduce the vibration transferred from the shop floor to the framing in the rest of the house.*



mits sound at different frequencies, some of which are audible to the human ear. Noise also is transmitted through the fabric of the house in the form of vibration. If the vibration can be isolated, the noise will diminish. Something as inexpensive as rubber pads under the feet of the machine will reduce noise levels (see the photos above).

The solutions to my noise problem were

something of a compromise between cost and versatility. My friend offered sensible advice on what I could achieve without spending a fortune.

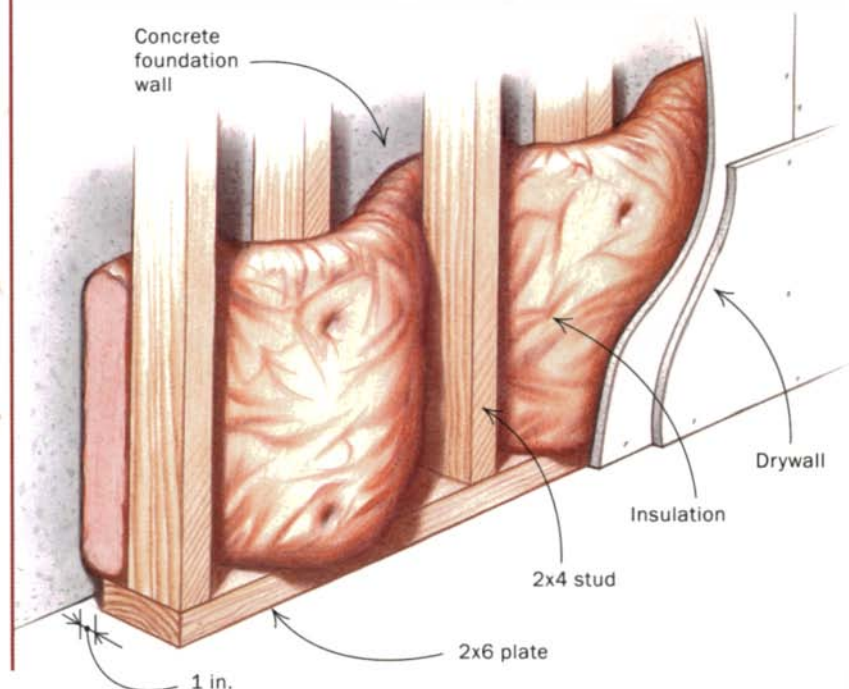
### Isolate the foundation with a stud wall and airspace

By adding a stud wall around the foundation perimeter, you can introduce an air

## WALLS

### ISOLATE THE FOUNDATION

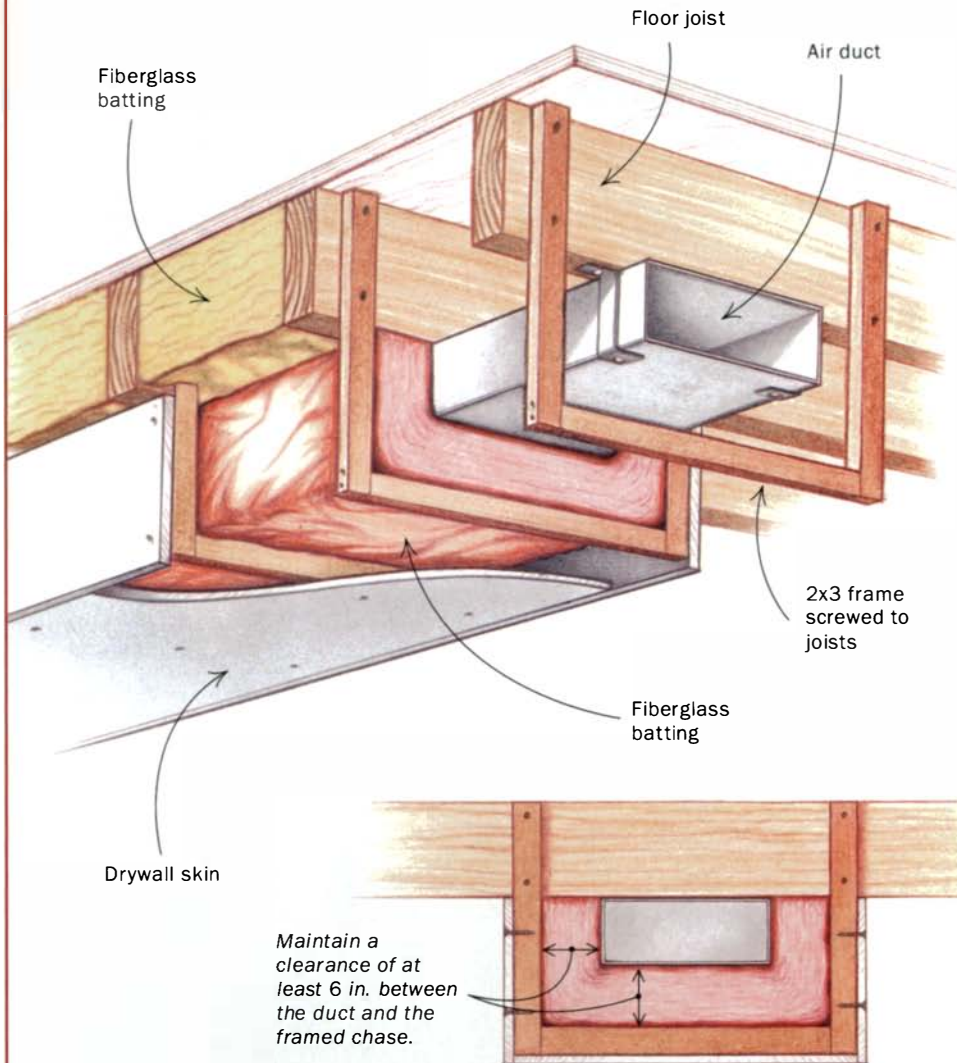
Corke made this wall using 2x4s for the studs (verticals) and 2x6s for the top and bottom plates (horizontal). He alternated the studs front to back along the top and bottom plates and wove fiberglass batting between them, leaving an airspace (1 in.) between the studs and the concrete foundation. He also covered the wall with two layers of drywall, staggering the seams.



**Meant for heat but good for sound.** Standard fiberglass batting, designed and traditionally used as a thermal insulation, also happens to be a pretty good sound dampener. A second layer of drywall will decrease substantially the level of sound that penetrates the structure. Stagger seams to ensure an airtight bond.

## MAKE AN INSULATED FRAME FOR DUCTWORK

Sound travels through most solid material better than it travels through air. Heating and air-conditioning ducts in a basement shop can transmit loud noises easily up through two floors of a house. An insulated plumbing chase can make a big difference.



gap that reduces vibratory noises. The stud wall also increases thermal insulation and provides a convenient place to hang cabinets and tools. In my shop, I set the stud wall 1 in. out from the concrete wall to create that important dead-air space, and secured it at the bottom with a bead of construction adhesive. This method goes fast because there's no drilling into the concrete wall or floor.

I built the 2x4 stud walls between 2x6 bottom plates and top plates, ensuring that the spacing was right for the double layer of drywall. The studs are spaced 12 in. on center and alternate front to back on the 2x6s (see the bottom drawing and photos on p. 79). The walls can be built in place, but it's easier to build them on the floor in sections, then lift them into position. Make each section a bit undersize and shim it up from the floor or where the top plate meets the joists above it.

After the stud wall has been secured, weave fiberglass batts between the studs, starting at the bottom and working up with each layer. A few staples here and there should stop it from drooping.

As you can see from my experience, not all noise-control efforts need be complicated or expensive. The simplest solution is to isolate machines from the floor with rubber pads to prevent vibration from traveling through the rest of the house. As a final detail, fit weatherstripping around doors and windows and add fireproof caulk around plumbing and wiring holes that penetrate to the rooms upstairs.

### Insulate the ceiling

The key to blocking airborne noise is to use loose insulation in conjunction with air gaps.



**Cover the duct with a framed opening.** Simple 2x3 frames assembled at the workbench are easily attached to floor joists with screws.



**Stuff the airspace with thermal insulation.** Fill the airspace around the duct with good-quality fiberglass insulation. Higher R-values dampen noise more effectively.

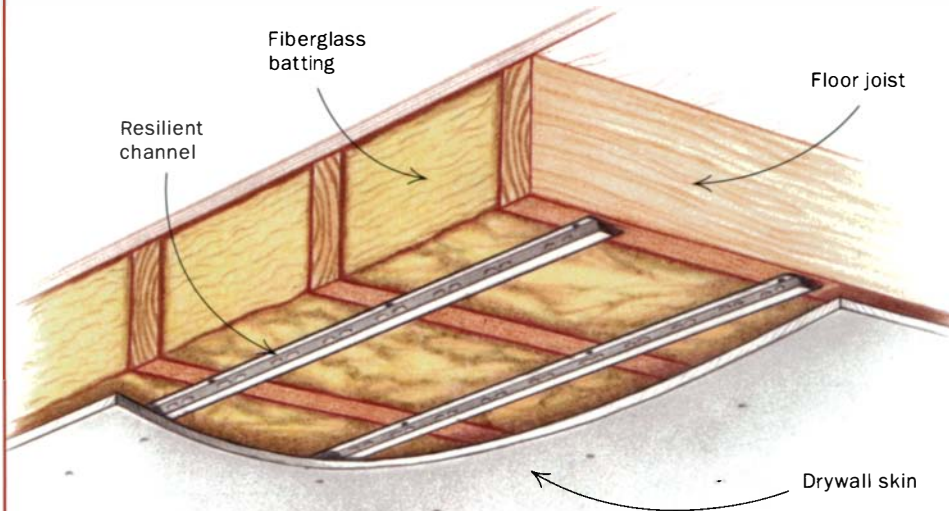


**Skin the frame with drywall.** Sheets of gypsum board add mass to the chased opening and deflect much of the airborne sound.



## SEPARATE THE CEILING FROM THE JOISTS

Hanging the drywall ceiling from the channel hardware shown below greatly reduces the amount of sound that travels through the structure. This technique essentially creates a dead airspace between the basement and the framing above it.



**This product is inexpensive and effective.** Called resilient channel, this light-gauge steel furring material creates a sound barrier by separating drywall ceilings and walls from the framework of the house. A 10-ft. length costs about \$1.



Fiberglass batting makes a decent sound barrier, and it's easy to install. In my shop, I stuffed it between the overhead joists. Although my primary goal was to create a sound barrier, the additional thermal value is a plus: I have a warmer shop in winter and a cooler one in summer.

Keep in mind that plumbing pipes and heating or air-conditioning ducts are conduits for carrying loud sounds such as whirring sawblades and hammer blows. Noise bouncing onto ductwork can permeate every room in the house. The foil-backed insulation found around most ducts is intended primarily as thermal insulation, and it's packed too tightly to absorb much noise. Looser material, such as the fiberglass batts that incorporate air gaps, will do a much better job of absorbing sound.

Make a basic framework to enclose pipes and ducts, and stuff fiberglass batts into all of these plumbing chases (see the photos and drawing on the facing page). The framework must be at least 6 in. away from pipes and ducts, or the sound-insulation properties will be negated.

### Offset drywall from the ceiling joists

Don't fasten a drywall ceiling directly to the underside of the joists. You can reduce sound transmission considerably by separating the drywall with an airspace created by a product called resilient channel (above). Installed so that it runs perpendicular to the joists, this metal channel is sturdy enough to carry the weight of the ceiling.

Whether installed on ceilings or walls, a double layer of drywall will increase the



## Materials to avoid

I have read accounts by people who assert the sound-deadening and cost-effective benefits of covering walls with egg cartons. The reasoning behind this technique is that the undulating surface of the carton will interrupt and refract sound. Although there is some merit to this approach, the results often are disappointing. Also, the carton can be easily damaged, looks horrid, and is a fire hazard.

Foam rubber, which is used to make mattresses, does absorb sound well, but it ignites easily and gives off toxic fumes when burning, so it, too, is best avoided.

Polystyrene has good thermal-insulation properties, but it is too densely packed to make a good acoustic insulator. It is also highly flammable.

resistance to how quickly a fire will spread as it also reduces the noise transfer, but you must stagger all of the seams between the two layers for a strong, airtight bond. Run the first layer of drywall the long dimension perpendicular to the resilient channel and parallel to the joists. Place the seams of the long dimension between the joists, not under them, and the seams of the short dimension directly along the resilient channel. I prefer 3/8-in.-thick drywall because I can handle a full sheet with the aid of a T-shaped strut to hold up one end. You can tape and add joint compound on the last layer, but it's not essential for reducing sound. □

*Mark Corke is a freelance photographer who enjoys woodworking in his new home on the Connecticut shoreline.*

# Mobile Bases

For shops large or small, mobility offers convenience, as long as the base is stable and rolls smoothly

BY CLIFF COLLEY

Most woodworkers I know have small shops where space is at a premium. I'm at the other extreme. I teach woodworking in a huge space; nearly 6,000 sq. ft. Two of our four bandsaws spend a significant amount of time on mobile bases, rolling from one end of the shop to the other. Whether to resaw a fresh load of lumber close to the storage stack or to turn the feed path of a long board away from other machines and students, without these bases, our productivity would be hampered severely.

Whether their shops are small or large, woodworkers face space issues sooner or later. Mobile bases offer the convenience of being able to relocate machinery easily, allowing woodworkers to use shop space more efficiently.

I tested seven mobile machine bases to move a couple of bandsaws around the shop. I chose five universal bases—Delta 50-345, General 50-025, HTC 2000, Jet HMB-UMB, and Shop Fox D2057—and two dedicated bases—Delta 50-274 and HTC HRBS-14. All range in price from about \$50 to \$100. I think the



## Dedicated vs. universal bases: Which is right for you?

The foremost requirements for a mobile base are that it be strong and stable. It must not buckle under the weight of a machine, and it must not wobble while the machine is in use. It is an added benefit if it transports a machine with ease and if its handles and foot levers are easy to see and to use.

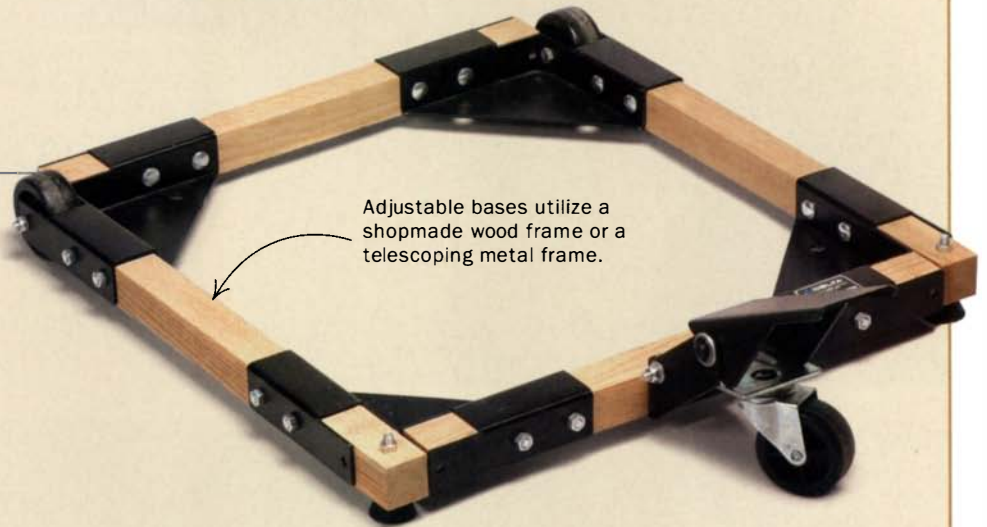
### DEDICATED BASES

Dedicated bases are engineered to the weight and dimensions of a specific machine. However, most dedicated bases fit more than one machine. The HTC HRBS-14 (right), for example, fits a variety of 14-in. bandsaws. Often, more than one machine from a company will fit within the footprint of its dedicated base. Such is the case with the Delta 50-274 (see p. 86), which is made to fit six Delta machines.



### UNIVERSAL BASES

Universal bases can fit almost any machine as long as the footprint fits within the base's adjustment range. A base that's too big usually is fairly easy to retrofit by adding a plywood bottom, cutting the base's rails shorter, and/or by drilling out extra bolt catch holes in the base's runners.



models offer a good cross section of what is available today.

### Not all bases are easily assembled

The construction requirements for each brand varied a lot—from arriving almost ready-made out of the box to assembly that seemed almost as complicated as that of a pocket watch.

On first inspection, I thought the Jet universal base was well engineered. Each side has one solid rail made from flat bar stock with a single set of holes for the bolt catches. The parts snapped together in about three minutes. Assembly was nearly as easy with the Delta 50-274 and the HTC HRBS-14 dedicated bases.

The universal Delta 50-345 comes as a set of parts and metal corner assemblies. It re-

quires the user to fit it out with wood rails; the manufacturer recommends using hardwood, such as oak or maple. I made mine out of red oak. Assembly of the Delta 50-345 was more labor-intensive than any of the other bases, but the end result was a perfect fit to the footprint of my machine.

The HTC 2000 has 108 pieces to assemble. That's a lot, but this unit proved to be worth the extra effort, as the fit was solid. The rails also allow a variety of size options.

The General 50-025 required a lot of assembly. This base arrived with 114 parts. However, assembly was straightforward once I studied the instructions and parts list provided.

The Shop Fox had the most parts—128, to be exact. Compared with other units reviewed here, parts for this base were diffi-

cult to fit, so assembly was frustrating and labor-intensive.

### Bases should not wobble under load

The usefulness of a mobile base depends greatly on its weight-bearing capacity. I used two bandsaws to conduct this test. Each one weighs less than 250 lb. I did not include a tensile-strength trial because all of the bases are rated to bear much more weight than I intended to place on them. Still, one base did have difficulty holding firmly under the weight.

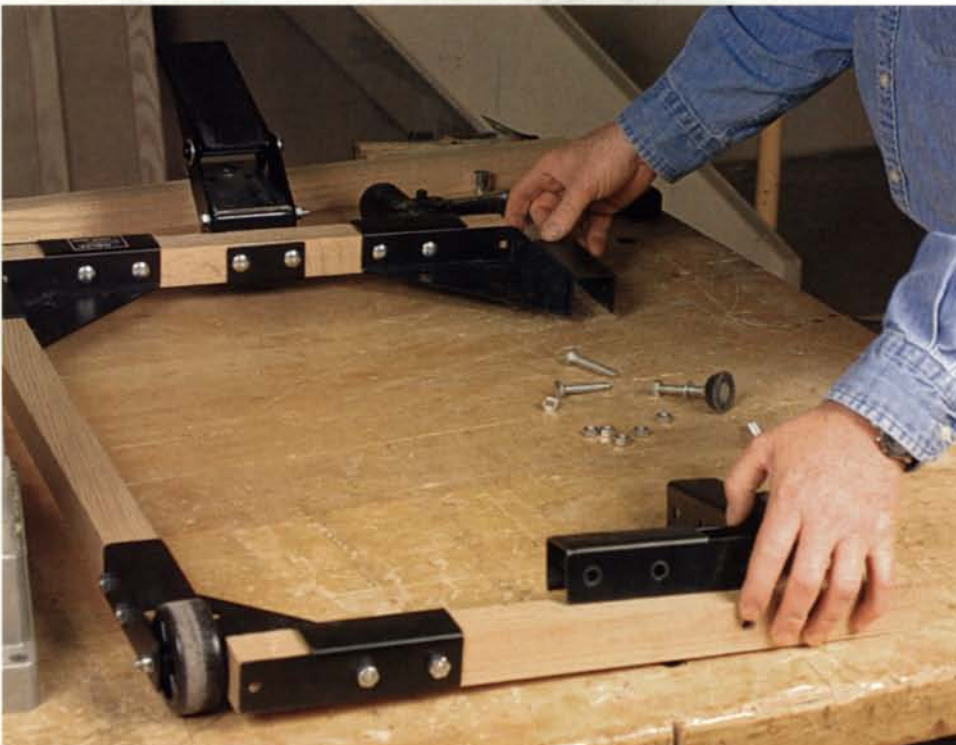
Both of the HTCs, the General, and the Shop Fox bases proved to be solid. The two Deltas, though lighter, were substantial enough to carry their loads faithfully.

I was disappointed in the performance of the Jet HMB-UMB. It is rated to hold

## UNIVERSAL BASES ASSEMBLY TIME VARIES



**Nearly ready to roll.** While most universal bases required extensive assembly, the Jet HMB-UMB arrived nearly ready-made. Snap catches (inset) make adjustments easy. Simplicity, however, comes at a price—the unit flexed under load.



**Some assembly required.** The Delta 50-345 requires milling four hardwood frame members, drilling holes, and assembling nuts and bolts. Once complete, it provides a stiff platform.

600 lb., yet the brackets that support the wheels flexed when I placed a 230-lb. bandsaw on it, and the whole unit wobbled while cutting, making it disconcerting to use.

### Foot-operated locks are easy to use

The wheel-locking system may be a deciding factor in choosing a mobile base. Wheel types and axle configurations vary, and each company has a unique take on locking systems. Some bases employ hand-operated systems, while others use foot-operated systems.

Even though I don't like the inconvenience of bending down to set a brake, I did like the hand-operated system on the HTC HRBS-14, which required minimal hand pressure to work.

The Shop Fox D2057, which also employs a hand-operated locking system, was one of the most solid, unwavering bases I tested, once it was locked down. However, locking the machine on its leveler pads felt awkward and seemed to take a long time. I called the company and discovered that I was overtightening the knob. I was assured that it takes only one-half turn to get the leveler pads to engage and secure the machine to the floor. I tried it again, and it worked.

The foot-operated locking system on the General worked well. The two easy-to-find foot levers made locking and unlocking the wheels a breeze.

The HTC 2000 has foot-operated locking levers on both sides of the unit to accommodate its two front caster wheels. The locks easily engaged to secure the machine on two leveler pads and two fixed wheels.

The Jet has a foot-operated lock on both fixed back wheels and a wing-nut type of friction lock on the side of its two front caster wheels. The locks on the fixed wheels were simple and straightforward. The side friction locks, however, were difficult to use.

The locking systems on both Delta bases also worked well. With one step, the units can be locked. And with a flick of the toe, the bases are ready to roll.

### Most bases rolled smoothly

Up to this point, I had conducted my tests on a level, clean floor. I decided to add realism to the mix. Taking turns with each base, I rolled the bandsaws through light sawdust and over a low-nap shop carpet.

The HTC 2000, with the narrowest and

## PARKING THE BASE LOCK THE WHEELS...



**Shorter foot levers can work well.** In spite of its smaller size, a well-engineered foot lock, like this lever on the Jet HMB-UMB, proved more than adequate to hold a machine in place. It also was easy to kick up and release for moving.



**Easy-to-operate hand lock.** The HTC hand-locking mechanism engages a small leaf spring that secures the wheel with little effort.

## ...OR LIFT THE WHEELS OFF THE FLOOR

softest wheels of the group, moved like a sports car compared with the rest of the bases. The narrow wheels worked like skinny tires in snow, cutting easily through the sawdust and over the carpet. However, the soft wheels on the HTC 2000 were susceptible to getting screws and other debris embedded in them.

The General 50-025, both Jet units, both Delta units, and the HTC HRBS-14 all cut the mustard where mobility is concerned. Even when the threaded locking feet were up off the floor, the Shop Fox still didn't roll as easily as the rest of the bases I tested.

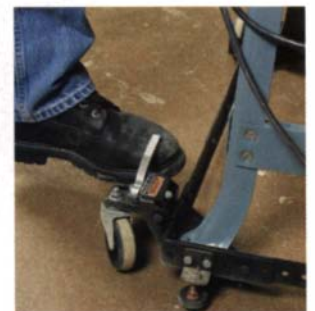
### Considerations for uneven floors

Another issue to consider when deciding on a mobile base is the type and condition of your shop floor. Is the floor fairly level, or is it uneven? Do you keep it reasonably clean? Any mobile base can be stalled by even a small scrap of wood on the floor.

Whether a mobile base is on the move or in its locked position, it is good to be aware of the number of points of contact it has with the floor. If your floor is flat and level, a unit with four wheels will work well. But if you plan to use the base on an uneven floor, a three-wheeled base may be the better choice. Basic laws of physics tell us that three contact points give better



**Foot-operated levers prevent unnecessary bending.** Both Delta models tested (50-345 shown left) have a foot-operated locking mechanism that is prominent and easy to operate.



**Footwork shouldn't be fancy.** Foot levers should be easy to locate and to use without looking. The HTC 2000 (above) and the Delta (left) have foot levers that are large and easy to operate.

stability on an uneven floor than four points do. The unique design of the HTC HRBS-14 places the third wheel away from the main footprint of the base on a cone-style extension assembly, which counterbalances the upper body weight of the bandsaw. The design offered great stability, whether moving or parked.

The only other three-wheeled units in this test are the Delta models 50-274 and 50-345. Each Delta base uses two leveler pads to catch it when the locking wheel is disengaged. The 50-274 is engineered the same way. But the 50-345 was somewhat tipsy in motion. When using this universal base with the bandsaw—a machine that tends to be top heavy—the unit tipped in an abrupt turn while I was moving it across the floor of the shop. This gave me a start, until the leveler pads touched down to keep the machine from toppling. With a little forethought, I was able to avoid this problem from then on.

### Picking the best performers

As the old adage says, “You get what you pay for.” Yet, when it comes to choosing a mobile machine base, you can get extra value for your money if you have a clear understanding of your needs.

If you're not interested in spending a lot of time putting together the complex gadgetry that some of these bases require, a dedicated base, such as the HTC HRBS-14 or the Delta 50-274, might be your answer.

In a hard-use setting, you can't beat either of the HTC units. The HTC HRBS-14 dedicated base is engineered to a very high standard. The same holds true for the HTC 2000 universal base. Some of HTC's mobile bases tend to be expensive, but HTC does offer a 30-day trial and a lifetime guarantee on all parts. To me, product integrity does not get any better than that. If you insist on the best and don't mind paying for it, HTC has a base waiting for you. (The company also builds custom mobile bases.) Another superstar is the General. It's massive, holds a machine firmly in place, rolls easily, locks decisively, comes with clear directions for assembly, and is a great value. □

*Cliff Colley teaches woodworking at a high school in Plymouth, Mass.*

## MOBILE-BASE SPECIFICATIONS

MODEL	STREET PRICE	EASE OF ASSEMBLY/ NUMBER OF PARTS	WEIGHT RATING
DELTA 50-274 800-223-7278 www.deltamachinery.com	\$100	Easy/ four parts	300 lb.
DELTA 50-345	\$65	Difficult/ 66 parts	300 lb. (using hardwood)
GENERAL 50-025 514-326-1161 www.general.ca	\$49	Difficult/ 114 parts	500 lb.
HTC 2000 800-624-2027	\$59	Very difficult/ 108 parts	400 lb.
HTC HRBS-14	\$99	Average/ 25 parts	475 lb.
JET HMB-UMB 800-274-6848 www.wmhtoolgroup.com	\$69	Easy/ eight parts	600 lb.
SHOP FOX D2057 800-225-1153 www.woodcraft.com	\$66	Most difficult/ 128 parts	700 lb.

**DELTA**  
MODEL 50-274



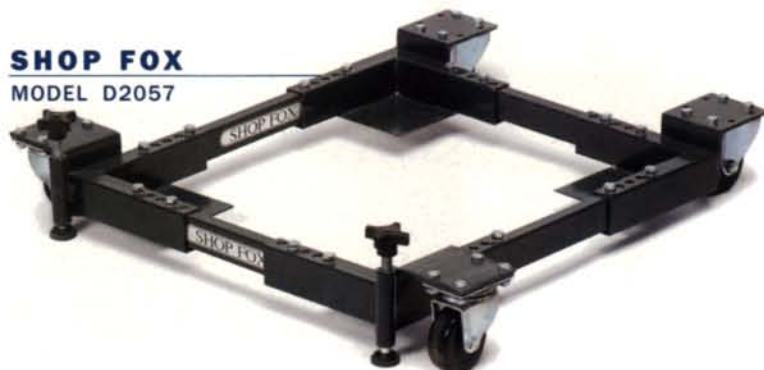
**DELTA**  
MODEL 50-345



**GENERAL**  
MODEL 50-025



DEDICATED OR UNIVERSAL	NUMBER OF WHEELS	LOCKING MECHANISM	MOBILITY	STABILITY	COMMENTS
Dedicated	Three	Single foot-operated lever and leveler pad	Very good	Good	Strong for its size; stable, in spite of caster wheel tilting machine in rolling mode
Universal	Three	Single foot-operated lever and leveler pad	Good	Good	Arrives in kit form; can be made to suit machine footprint; stable when parked; tippy while moving
Universal	Four	Two foot-operated levers and leveler pads	Very good	Very good	Probably the best mobile base in its price range
Universal	Four	Two foot-operated levers and leveler pads	Excellent	Very good	One of the top performers; HTC offers 30-day trial and lifetime guarantee on all parts
Dedicated	Three	One foot-operated lever and two hand-screw locks	Excellent	Excellent	Three-wheel "nose-cone" design aids in stability; a top performer, even on an uneven floor
Universal	Four	Two foot-operated levers and two friction locks	Average	Poor	Flexed under load; did not provide a solid platform for the bandsaw; suitable only for the lightest of shop machines
Universal	Four	Two hand-screw locks that adjust leveler pads independently	Average	Very good	Not intuitive to lock and unlock; a stout unit that provided a stable platform for a machine in the locked position



# Current Work

Current Work provides design inspiration by showcasing the work of our readers. For more details and an entry form, visit our Web site at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com). Send photos and entry forms to Current Work, *Fine Woodworking*, 63 S. Main St., Newtown, CT 06470.



◀ **Wayne Anderson** Elk River, Minn.

"I'm a tool collector," said Anderson, "and as a collector, I have a keen appreciation for hand tools." He has turned this appreciation into a hobby and builds handplanes using no machine tools. Two of Anderson's latest designs are this low-angle chariot-style block plane (1¾ in. wide by 5 in. long by 1½ in. high) and this skewed miter plane (2¾ in. wide by 11 in. long by 2½ in. high). The brass block plane and the steel miter plane both have cocobolo inlay and wax finishes.

◀ **Jimmy Carter** Plains, Ga.

"I like to work with green wood," said Carter, "and on occasion use only tools that were available during Colonial times." Since leaving the White House, the statesman turned avid woodworker has built about 150

pieces of furniture using many of his own shop-built tools, such as this hand-screw clamp. Made of

wood harvested from his family's land, the 1½-in.-square hard-maple jaws measure 7½ in. long, while the 12-in.-long alternating dogwood and black-walnut handles

and dogwood threaded rods give the clamp a 6-in. throat capacity. "For

threading, I used a tap and die given to me in 1984 as a full fee for making a speech to a university." The clamp is finished with oil.



**Larry Cluchey** Neustadt, Ont., Canada ▲

Cluchey made this pair of marking gauges (fence is 2¼ in. dia.; beam is 7 in. long) out of maple burl with bronze wear rings and steel cutters. "Settling on a round beam," said Cluchey, "meant that I could inset a rubber O-ring in a groove in the fence to keep a minimal amount of friction on the beam and prevent the fence from freely sliding up and down." The gauges are finished with tung oil.



**Steve Franklin** Danvers, Mass. ▶

Franklin made this toolbox (17 in. deep by 27½ in. wide by 17 in. high) as his first project when he was a student at North Bennet Street School. The case, drawer fronts, and door are made from one piece of Honduras mahogany, and the interior is maple. Franklin chose blind mitered dovetails for the carcass construction and half-lap and through-dovetails for the drawer joinery. He turned the desert ironwood pulls from stock given to him by his father-in-law. The toolbox is finished with shellac. Photo by Lance Patterson



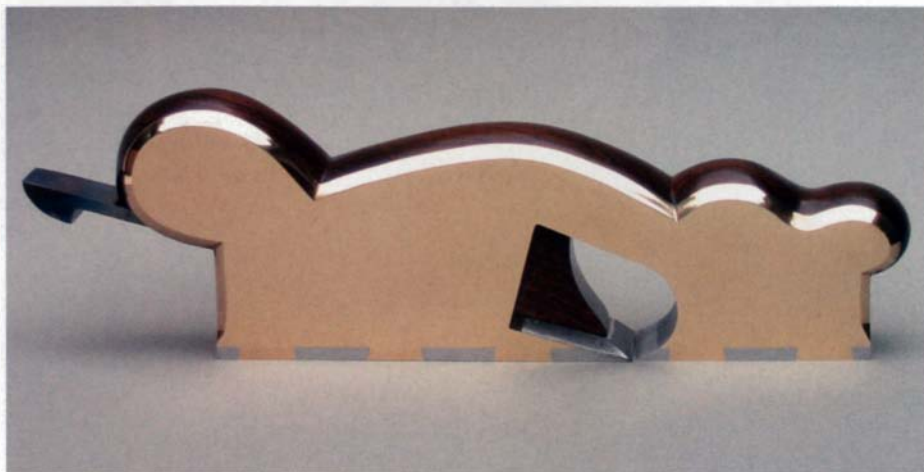
◀ **John Klink** Bethlehem, Pa.

A toolmaker by trade, Klink decided to put his professional skills to the task and make some of his own tools for woodworking. The scraper plane (2 in. wide by 6 in. long by 3¾ in. high) has a cast-iron body and a curly maple handle; the chisel plane (1½ in. wide by 5 in. long by 2 in. high) has a steel body with a padauk handle. Both planes have 1½-in.-wide A2-steel blades. Klink got the idea for the steel dual-end marking gauge (fence is 1¾ in. square; beam is 7¼ in. long) from Jim Kingshott's *Making and Modifying Woodworking Tools* (Guild of Master Craftsman Publications, 1993) and made the body and adjuster on a CNC milling machine. The wood handles on the planes are finished with tung oil.

**Dale Malayko** ▶  
St. Albert, Alta., Canada

"I decided to learn how to make furniture with hand tools," said Malayko, "but first I had to build the primary tool for a furniture maker: a workbench." Under the tutelage of Tage Frid and Frank Klausz in *Fine Woodworking Techniques #1* and #9 and Scott Landis' *The Workbench Book* (The Taunton Press, 1987), Malayko built this bench (29 in. deep by 78 in. wide by 38 in. high) out of Canadian spruce, eastern hard maple, and African padauk. The tail and shoulder vises are made entirely of wood, with the exception of the vise screws; the vise faces are covered with burgundy leather. The bench is finished with seven coats of Danish oil.



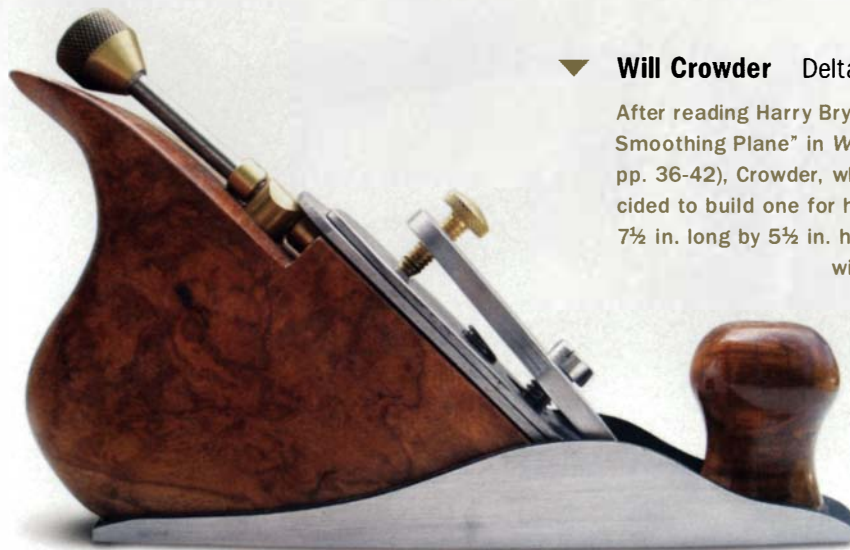
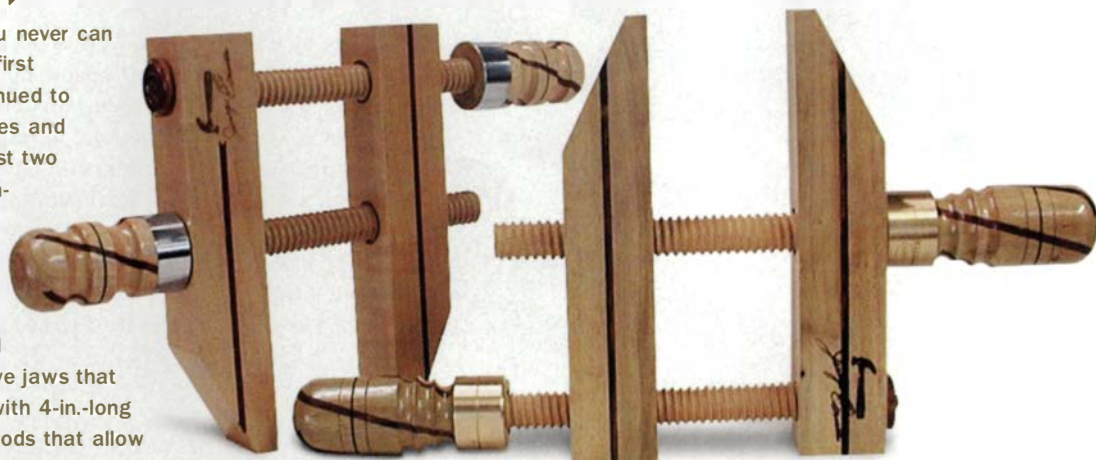


◀ **Brian Buckner** Tallahassee, Fla.

Buckner built this drop-nose shoulder plane ( $\frac{3}{4}$  in. wide by 6 in. long by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. high) based on a photo he saw in Sandor Nagyszalanczy's *The Art of Fine Tools* (The Taunton Press, 2000). The plane is constructed out of phosphor bronze and tool steel with a rosewood infill. "Unlike the original, which had a cast gunmetal shell," said Buckner, "I used dovetails to join the sides to the sole." The infill has a French-polish finish.

**Jerry Ernce** Broken Arrow, Okla. ▶

A given rule in woodworking is that you never can have enough clamps. Ernce made his first clamps out of necessity and has continued to outfit his shop with clamps of all shapes and sizes. These hand-screw clamps are just two of the many that he has made throughout the years. The clamp on the left is made of maple with padauk inlay and chrome handle ferrules; the clamp on the right is made of persimmon wood with rosewood inlay and brass handle ferrules. Both clamps have jaws that measure  $1\frac{1}{8}$  in. square by 8 in. long, with 4-in.-long handles and  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-dia. birch threaded rods that allow the jaws to open 4 in. Each clamp has a wipe-on polyurethane finish.

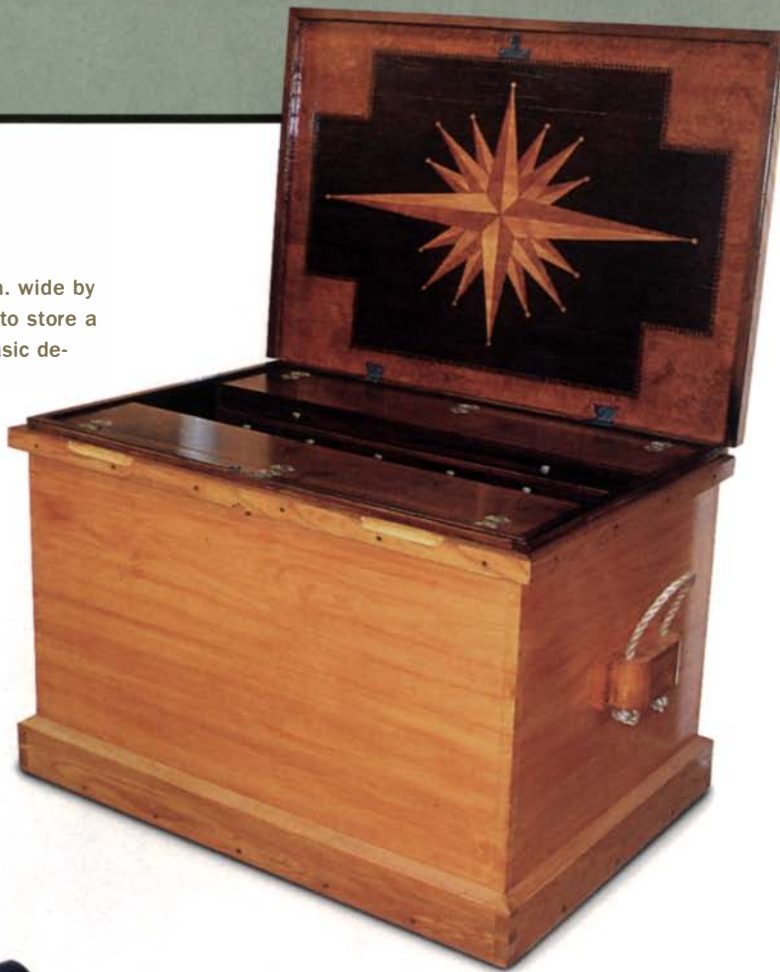


▼ **Will Crowder** Delta, B.C., Canada

After reading Harry Bryan's article "How to Make a 7" Smoothing Plane" in *Wooden Boat* magazine (issue #147, pp. 36-42), Crowder, who has a love for handplanes, decided to build one for himself. The smoother (2 in. wide by  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. long by  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. high) has a cherry handle and body with a mild steel sole. Except for the brass screws and the blade, he hand-crafted all of the parts himself. So pleased with the way the first one turned out, "I decided to make seven planes in total for friends and family for Christmas gifts," said Crowder. The plane has a lacquer finish.

**Michael A. Mason** Hales Corners, Wis. ▶

Mason built this cabinetmaker's chest (29 in. deep by 43 in. wide by 28 in. high) because he wanted a historically accurate way to store a part of his collection of antique woodworking tools. "The basic design of this chest is similar to the Duncan Phyfe chest," said Mason, "but I added some features, such as a second sliding till." The chest's case is made of pine, while the drawer tills are made of ribbon-striped mahogany and walnut. There are five drawers in the front till and 16 in the back; under each till and in the center are wells that can stow up to 100 molding planes. The inside of the lid is veneered with a star pattern of elm burl, maple, and mahogany. The chest has a shellac finish.



◀ **Robert M. Soule** West Haven, Conn.

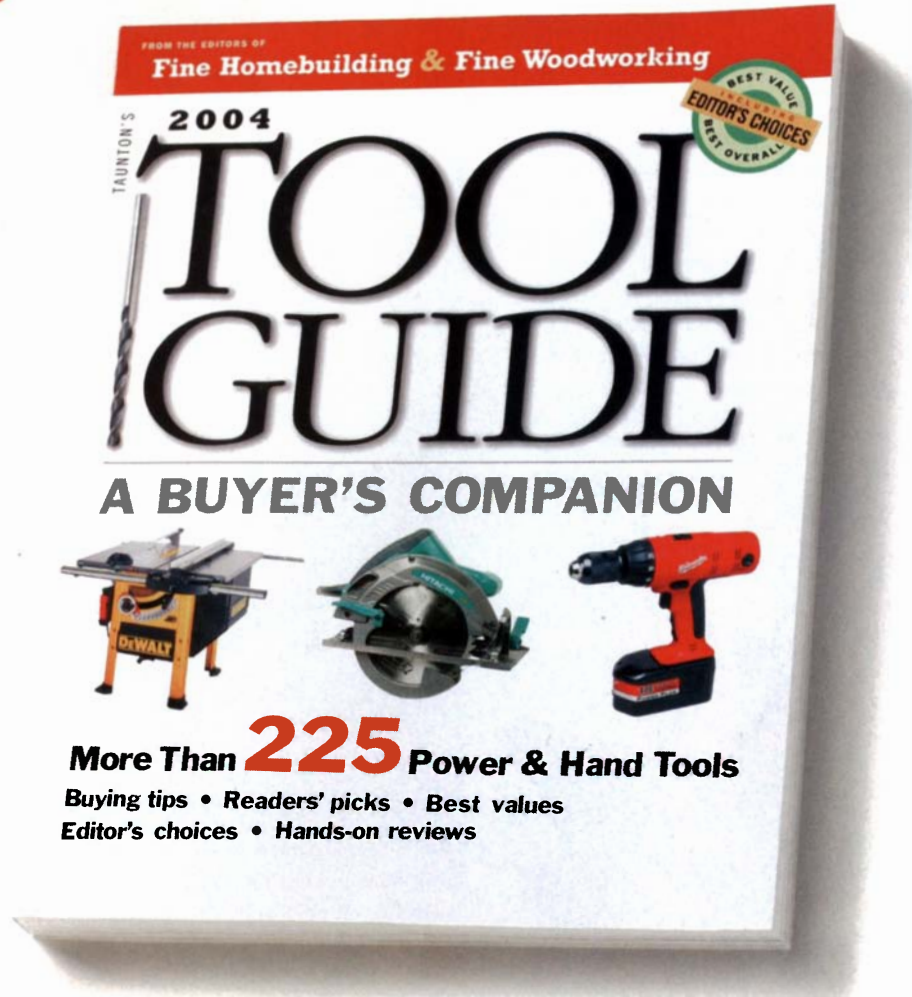
While flipping through an auction catalog, Soule spotted a rare three-arm plow plane that had sold recently for \$21,000. As an avid collector with 60 restored and reproduction plow planes in his collection, he decided to build this handled three-arm plow plane (10½ in. wide by 10½ in. long by 6¾ in. high) to add to his collection. The plane's body is made of applewood and features an ebony wedge and arms that are tipped with ivory. Soule threaded the boxwood screw arm and applewood nut himself. The plane is finished with shellac and oil.

**Joseph Petrovich** Salinas, Calif. ▶

"These screwdrivers developed out of an interest in preserving the cap-iron screws on my planes," said Petrovich. Because the screws have oversize slots that tend to get distorted with undersize blades, the one screwdriver that worked was a 19th-century piano tuner's type. Its only drawback: the 16-in. length. Made of bird's-eye maple and Gonçalo alves with annealed and ground-flat discarded files as blades, the screwdrivers measure 4¾ in., 5 in., and 7 in. in length. The handles, which are lathe-turned, are shaped to accommodate a palm grip with flats to keep them on the bench, and are finished with tung oil, shellac, and carnauba wax.



Available Now  
in Stores!



Spend 10 bucks now.  
Save hundreds later.

We tested more than 225 tools and surveyed 6,000 independent tool users to write the first-ever, 120-page Taunton Tool Guide. Routers, sanders, tablesaws, cordless drills... all your favorite tools are in here. Plus: Tool-buying tips, Editors' picks for the Best Overall and the Best Value, and Readers' Choice Awards.

Only \$9.99

To order call toll free 866-452-5184 or visit [www.thetoolguide.com/savenow](http://www.thetoolguide.com/savenow)

Product # 015001. Note: Payable in U.S. funds only. Please add \$3.50 shipping and handling.  
Taunton's 2004 Tool Guide is not included in your subscription to *Fine Woodworking* or *Fine Homebuilding* magazines.

FROM THE PUBLISHER OF ***Fine Homebuilding & Fine Woodworking***

# You Did It Yourself

Using Raised Panel Doors,  
Dovetail Drawer Boxes or  
Complete Cabinet Kits  
from



531 S Highway 2 East • Minot, ND 58701  
Ph. (701) 839-3384 • Fax (701) 852-6090  
email: doormker@minot.com

[www.scherrs.com](http://www.scherrs.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 93

Find the right tool...when you need it!



**VETO PROPAC**  
TOOL BAGS THAT WORK.

Model XL Tool Bag

- Rugged Construction
- Holds 100 Hand Tools
- Vertical Organization
- Easy Tool Access
- Secure on the Job
- Safe for Transport
- Ergonomic Design



Call toll free: **877.847.1443**  
Order online: [www.vetopropac.com](http://www.vetopropac.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 174

## A great vacation and an incredible journey in Craftsmanship.

For fine woodworking instruction in a comfortable and fun atmosphere, *you have to come to Rosewood.*

Now featuring after hours tours of some of Ottawa's finest museums, restaurants, sporting events, and tourist attractions.

Call us. Courses still available for 2004.



Instruction in Fine Woodworking

Rosewood is located in Almonte, Ontario just outside of Ottawa, Canada's Capital.

[www.rosewoodstudio.com](http://www.rosewoodstudio.com)  
Toll Free 1-866-704-7778

READER SERVICE NO. 169

## Razor Sharp Lightning Fast

**Now Available At Your Local Doit Best**

\*Dealer inquiries encouraged

**Easily Interchangeable and Reversible**

Razor sharp, stainless steel Microplane™ shapers are for rapid smoothing and shaping of wood, plastic, rubber, auto body filler, vinyl or asphalt tile, composite and other nonmetallic material. Snap-in blades available in coarse and fine cuts and flat, right-angle and round shapes.

**Microplane**  
Sharper Cutting Tools

1-800-555-2767 • [www.microplane.com](http://www.microplane.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 84

## Teardrop Trailer Plans

Build your own classic camping trailer!  
The ultimate woodworking project

- NO WELDING REQUIRED!
- FULL GALLEY IN REAR

8' Cubby



Complete plans include built-in icebox, stove, water tank, 12V electric system, cabinets, floor hatch for porta-potty. Sleeps two inside the cabin, 4' x 8', 900 lbs.

**Kuffel Creek Press • [www.kuffelcreek.com](http://www.kuffelcreek.com)**  
PO Box 2663 • Riverside • CA 92516 • fax 909/781-9409

READER SERVICE NO. 150

## WHITECHAPEL LTD



THE WORLD'S FINEST HARDWARE  
Free 216 page color catalog and reference: 1-307-739-9478  
Web: [whitechapel-ltd.com](http://whitechapel-ltd.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 44

## The Keller Dovetail System:

"Your best choice"  
- *Woodworker's Journal*

"The setup is easy, adjustments minimal and the joints perfect. It's the easiest of all the jigs to use and great for production use."

- *Woodworker's Journal*

"In a class by itself."

- *WOOD Magazine*

VIDEO: \$8.95 + \$2 P/H  
No test cuts. Fast setup. Unlimited widths. Precision joinery. Classic and variable spacing. Compound angles. Curved dovetails. Box joints. 20 year warranty. Made in USA since 1976.

To find out more, contact your Dealer or



**KELLER & CO.**

1327 'I' Street, Dept. F14  
Petaluma, CA 94952

1-800-995-2456

707-763-9336

[www.kellerdovetail.com](http://www.kellerdovetail.com)

**Keller Dovetail System**

*Simply the best!*

READER SERVICE NO. 3

COLLECTOR'S SPECIALTY WOODS  
WWW.CSWOODS.COM



48 SPECIES IN STOCK  
UNIQUE COLLECTION

SHOWROOM / MILLROOM  
WOOD YARD AND SHOP

PHONE: 1-800-746-2413  
FAX: 719-746-2433  
EMAIL: CSWOODS@CSWOODS.COM

8055 COUNTY ROAD 570  
GARDNER, COLORADO 81040

"ROCKY MOUNTAIN DRY"

PORT ORFORD CEDAR

READER SERVICE NO. 154

## The Ultimate Molder!



- Straight, Round, Elliptical
- Simple, Easy, Safe
- 100 Standard Knives
- Custom Knives Available
- Quality Construction
- Made in the USA



**Williams & Hussey  
Machine Co., Inc.**

800.258.1380 (USA)  
603.654.6828

Visit us online at  
[www.williams-hussey.com](http://www.williams-hussey.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 205

### Connecticut Valley School of Woodworking

Classes held: nights, weekends & week-long classes  
Start Planning your Spring & Summer  
Woodworking Now

**Steve Kain & Bob Van Dyke**  
Fundamentals of Furniture Making

**Nick Schade**  
Build a Stitch & Glue Sea Kayak

**Mario Rodriguez**  
Make a Windsor Chair

**Garrett Hack**  
Design and Build a Chair

**Teri Masaschi**  
Furniture Finishing-Start to Finish  
Furniture Restoration Techniques

249 Spencer St., Manchester, CT 06040  
860.647.0303. [www.schoolofwoodworking.com](http://www.schoolofwoodworking.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 96

*Adams Wood Products*<sup>TM</sup>  
LTD., I.P.

STOCK ITEMS  
NO MINIMUM ORDERS  
-OR-  
WE WILL MAKE PRODUCTION RUNS OF YOUR PART

By American Craftsmen

CHAIR LEGS  
ACR08  
AMD08

BUN LEGS  
A0556

FR STYLE QUEEN ANNE LEGS

FINIALS  
A0851

113 REEDED BASE W/206 LEG

404 CHAIR KITS

P.O. Box 728, Dept. Q37  
Morristown, TN 37815-0728  
Phone 423-587-2942 • Fax 423-586-2188  
[www.adamswoodproducts.com](http://www.adamswoodproducts.com)

FREE COLOR CATALOG

READER SERVICE NO. 20

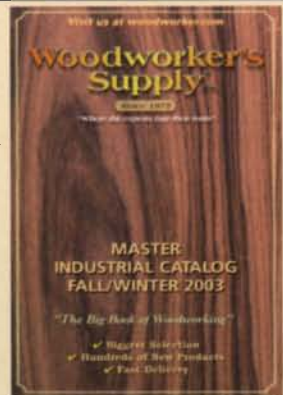
If you are in a  
woodworking  
business...  
this could be the  
most valuable tool  
in your office<sup>SM</sup>.

Please call  
1-800-645-9292  
for your 528 page  
catalog.

FREE  
to woodworking  
businesses.

visit us at [woodworker.com](http://woodworker.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 123



KLINGSPOR'S  
**WOODWORKING SHOP**  
"Quality Tools and Supplies for the Woodworker"

Whether you shop thru our catalog,  
our website or one of our four retail stores,  
you will find everything you need for your  
woodworking projects ... start to finish.

[www.woodworkingshop.com](http://www.woodworkingshop.com)

Call today for your free 64 page catalog 1-800-228-0000

READER SERVICE NO. 187



**FIRST WE RAISED THE BAR.  
THEN WE LOWERED THE PRICE.**



*Due to heavy demand,  
quantities are limited.  
Check with your distributor  
for availability.*

## **Introducing the innovative JET 10" SuperSaw.**

It's the attention to detail that sets this saw apart, so let's cut to the chase. Compared to the competition, the JET 10" SuperSaw features two solid cast-iron wings instead of stamped steel giving it twice the cast-iron work surface of other saws. Its optional sliding table boasts a miter gauge with T-slot and a handy

angle reference guide. It has a brand-new fence with magnified cursor, micro adjustment and 4 T-slots for jigs. And it's heavier than the competition, with a fully enclosed cabinet, larger dust port, and wider stance that makes it far more stable. The SuperSaw is also the only saw on the planet that includes an on/off switch that can

be positioned anywhere along the fence rail, plus thoughtful details like a reset button and power indicator light.

So to review, the JET 10" SuperSaw has better specs, more features, and a warranty that's twice as long. Oh, and did we mention it costs less? Visit your JET distributor for more details.

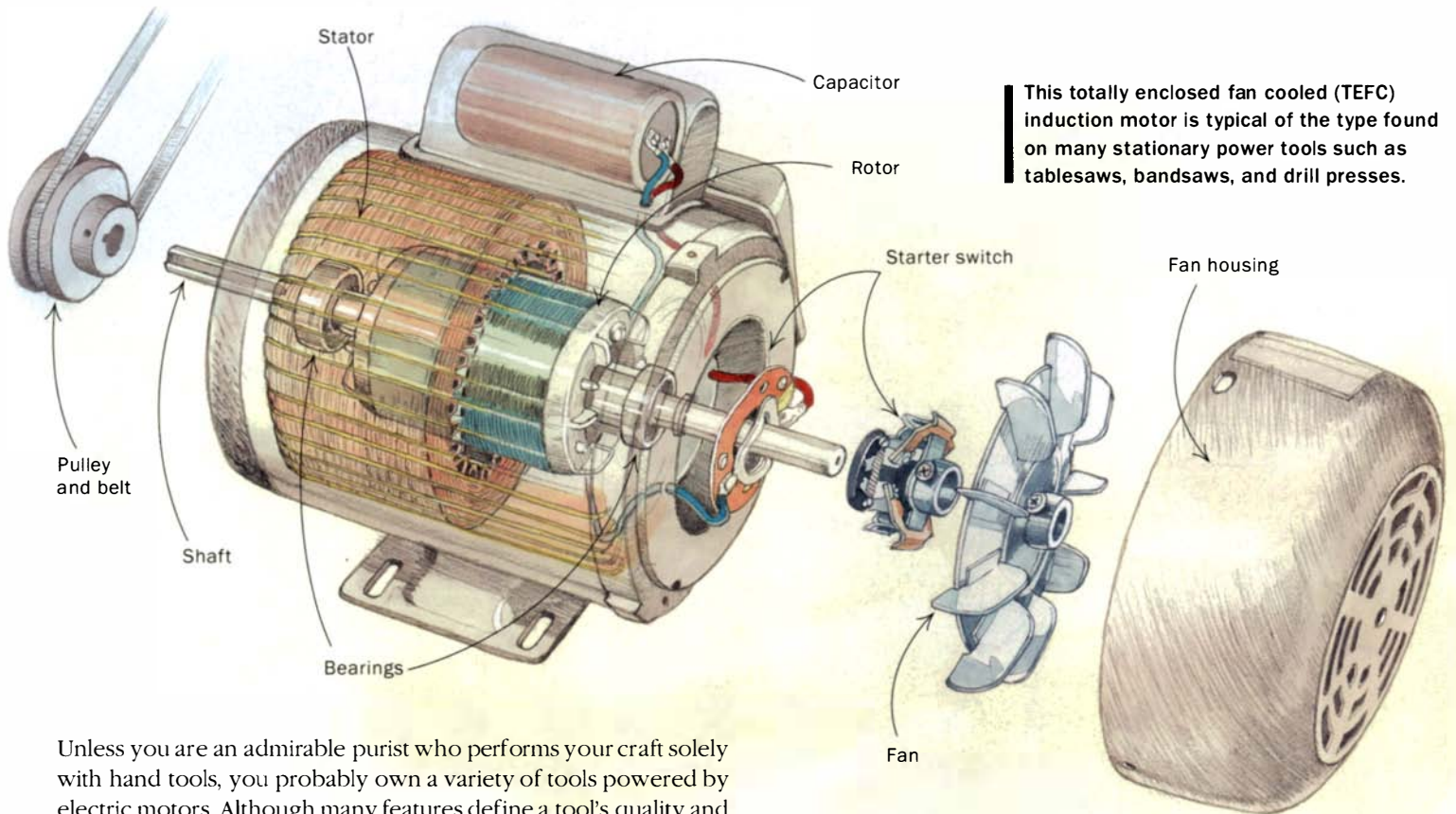


*For a free 23-minute video  
showing everything the SuperSaw can do,  
call 1-800-274-6848 or visit [jettools.com](http://jettools.com).*

# **JET**

Powermatic, Performax and JET. A Family of Brands.

## How an induction motor works



Unless you are an admirable purist who performs your craft solely with hand tools, you probably own a variety of tools powered by electric motors. Although many features define a tool's quality and usefulness, the motor probably is the most important and yet the most overlooked.

Induction motors usually are found on large stationary tools (handheld power tools use smaller universal motors). Often mounted outside the tool, an induction motor is easily recognizable by its large, coffee-can shape. In many cases the shaft also is visible and typically has a pulley mounted on it.

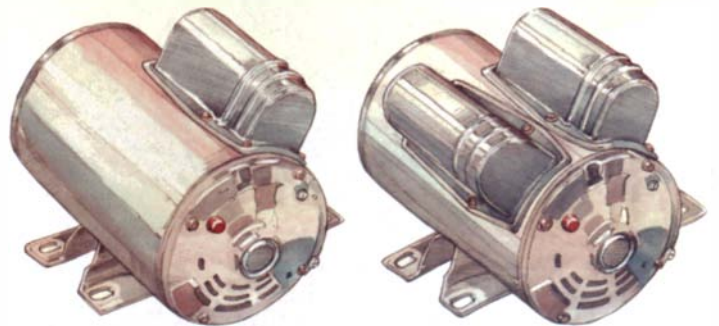
### Few moving parts increases reliability

Induction motors consist of a copper wire and an iron rotor that is surrounded by a stator, itself made up of coils of copper wire. Power is fed directly to the stator only; the resulting magnetic field induces current in the rotor and makes it turn. There is no direct electrical connection to the rotor itself. The only other moving parts are the two bearings supporting the rotor and, on most single-phase motors, a starter switch. Thus, the only things on a single-phase motor that can wear out mechanically are the starting switch and the two bearings.

Bearing life is related directly to bearing speed, and because the speed of the induction motor is relatively low, bearings rarely fail unless they become contaminated with dirt. Sealed ball bearings are preferable because they are lubricated for life, keep out dust, and should last for 100,000 hours or more.

On the outside of most modern induction motors, you will see one or two cylindrical capacitors about the size of a toilet-paper tube. One capacitor indicates a capacitor-start motor, which boosts

### ONE LUMP OR TWO?



Most induction motors used in woodworking machinery have one or two capacitors on their outside. One capacitor (left) helps the motor start by adding torque, while better motors include a second capacitor (right) that makes the motor run more smoothly with improved efficiency.

start-up torque; two capacitors indicate a capacitor-start/capacitor-run motor, with the second capacitor increasing the efficiency of the motor and making it run more smoothly.

### Slow speed is ideal for large power tools

An induction motor's speed is determined by the AC frequency of the power supplied and the way the coils of wire are wound on the stator. The most common speeds for induction motors used in



# Makita®

# DEAD-ON ACCURACY

## PRECISION



Single piece, precision machined aluminum base remains flat and true and never needs alignment

## POWER

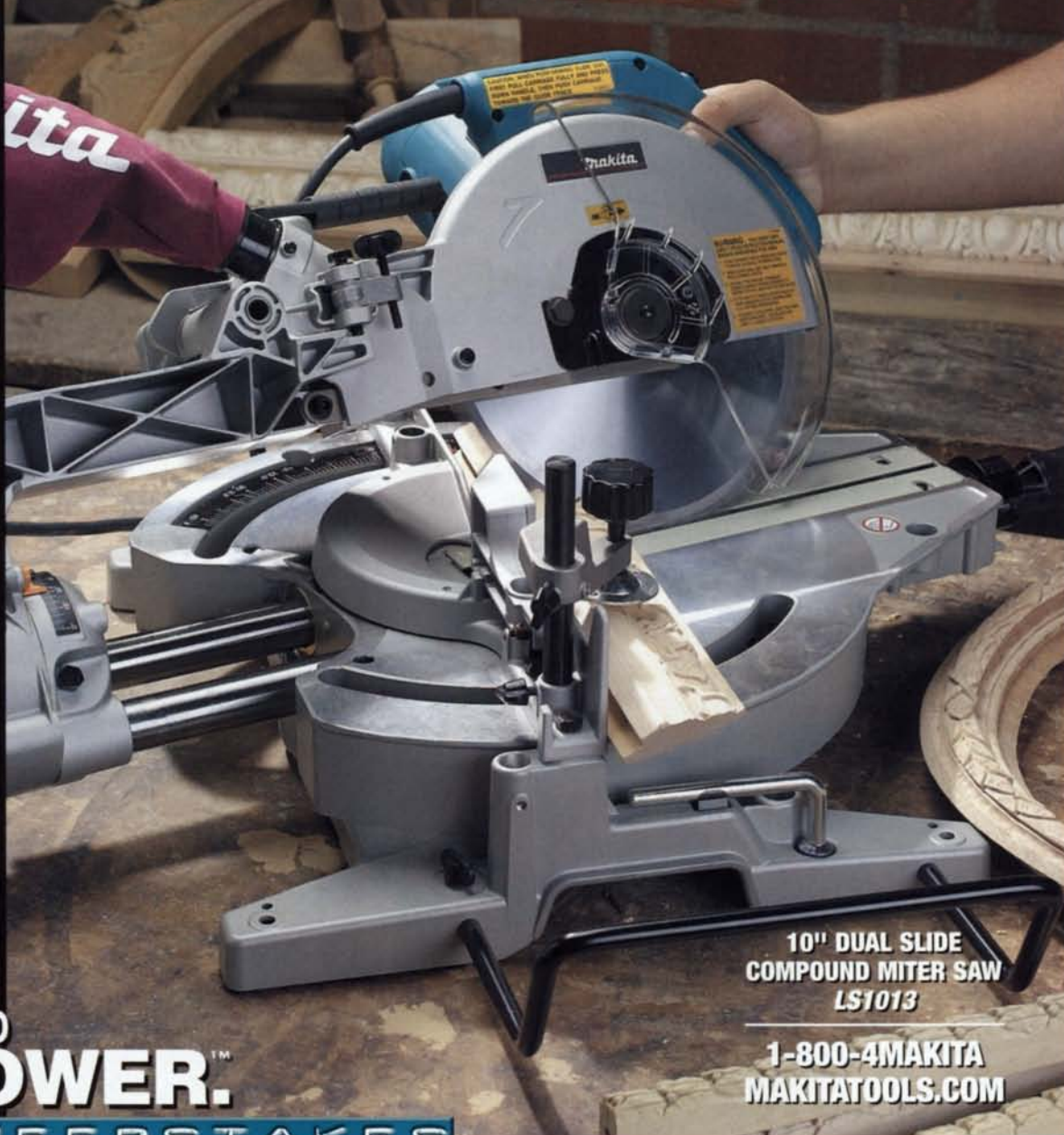


Dynamically balanced, direct drive motor with dual ball bearings never slips or bogs down like belt drive units

## ACCURACY



Dual rails supported by dual linear ball bearings for a "Dead-on" cut that never needs adjusting



10" DUAL SLIDE  
COMPOUND MITER SAW  
LS1013

1-800-4MAKITA  
MAKITATOOLS.COM

# SHIFT TO FULL POWER.™

## SWEEPSTAKES

# GRAND PRIZE

# SUZUKI

## QuadSport® Race Pack

Models LT-2400, LT-2250 and LT80

(2) First Prizes  
A Day for Two with

TEAM SUZUKI RACING

(10) Second Prizes  
Makita 18V MForce™  
4-pc. Combo Kit Model DK1052DL

(15) Third Prizes  
Makita 12V Impact Driver Kit  
Model 6916DWDE

For Official Sweepstakes Rules, see pamphlet at participating Makita distributors. No purchase necessary in order to enter sweepstakes. Void where prohibited. Must be 18 years or older to enter. Ends 12/31/03.

READER SERVICE NO. 177

Purchase Model LS1013

## GET FREE BY MAIL



14.4V 3/8" Cordless  
Driver-Drill Kit

Up To  
\$170 Value

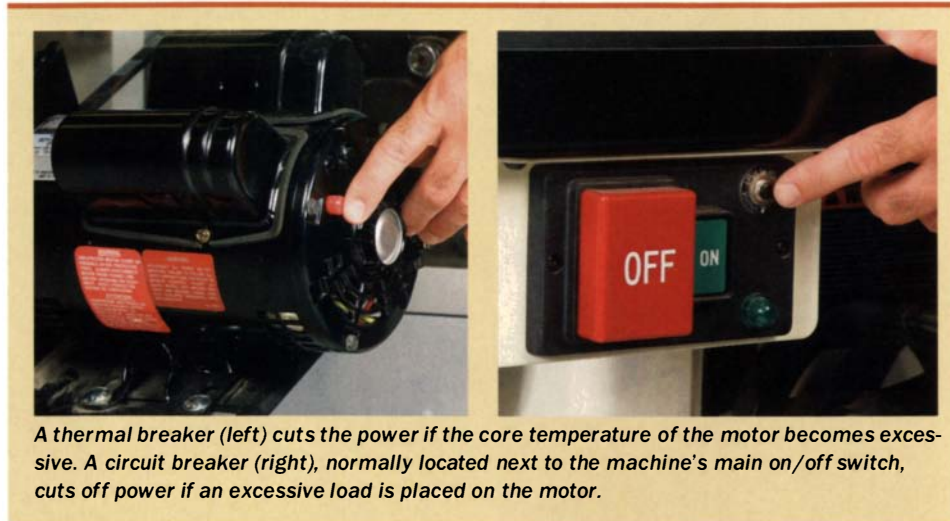
Model 6228DWAE

Good through December 31, 2003

Professional rider with advanced skills shown.



## KEEP YOUR MOTOR COOL



*A thermal breaker (left) cuts the power if the core temperature of the motor becomes excessive. A circuit breaker (right), normally located next to the machine's main on/off switch, cuts off power if an excessive load is placed on the motor.*

power tools are 1,725 rpm (bandsaws and drill presses) and 3,450 rpm (planers and tablesaws). These relatively low speeds, as compared with universal motors, make induction motors ideal for use in these tools. For example, a 10-in. tablesaw blade requires 5,000 rpm to cut efficiently. A 3,450-rpm motor is easily stepped up to this speed via a pair of correctly sized pulleys.

Induction-motor housings come in three main designs: open configurations that allow in dirt and moisture; drip proof, which can withstand an occasional drop of water; and totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC), which keeps out everything. TEFC motors cost more than open and drip-proof designs, but given the generally dusty conditions in a woodshop, TEFC motors are preferable for woodworking tools.

### Excessive heat kills induction motors

The single biggest cause of motor failure is heat. The harder you use your tool, the more power it draws and the more heat it creates. The amount of heat also depends on the motor's efficiency. No motor is 100% efficient. If it was, 100% of the power going into the motor would be converted into power delivered to the sawblade. If your motor is 70% efficient at a particular speed and torque output, 30% of the power going into your tool is being converted to heat. When you stall a motor, it is running at 0% efficiency: 0% power out and 100% heat generation.

This heat can increase to the point that the varnish insulation on the copper wire can burn off, cause the wires to short out against themselves, and even melt the copper, destroying the motor.

**Two types of breakers prevent overheating**—Many modern induction motors have a thermal breaker located on the motor itself. The breaker cuts the power if the core temperature of the motor becomes too high. In practice, repeated tripping of a thermal breaker will wear out a motor. If you do cause the breaker to trip, resist the temptation to resume business as normal as soon as the breaker can be reset. Take a break for at least 30 minutes, preferably an hour, and then reduce the severity of the cut you are making.

A better method is a circuit breaker that trips when too much

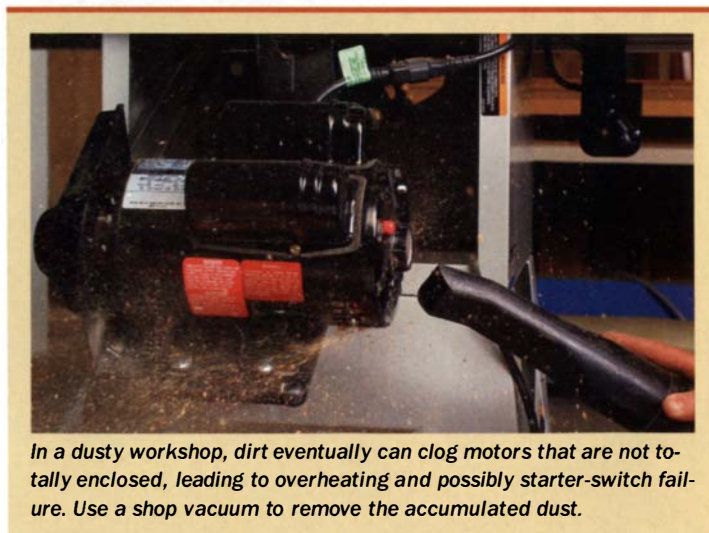
power is being consumed for too long. This device, normally located near the machine's on/off switch (or part of it), should protect the motor and the windings almost forever, but only if the motor airways and windings are kept clean.

**Use the proper extension cord**—The voltage supplied also affects the performance of an induction motor. Other tools operating on the same circuit as the induction motor sometimes reduce the voltage available to the motor. If the motor is designed to run off standard household current of 110v to 120v and is supplied with lower voltage, the torque output will be greatly reduced, and motor overheating is possible.

If you must employ an extension cord, keep it as short as possible and of a gauge suitable for the motor's rating. For a 15-amp motor, a 25-ft. cord should be 14 ga. or preferably 12 ga., and a 50-ft. cord should be 12 ga. or, better still, 10 ga. The smaller the gauge number, the thicker the wire inside the extension cord and the greater its capacity to deliver current over longer distances.

**Keep the motor clean**—If the air vents are not kept clear and the inside of a motor becomes packed with sawdust, the internal cooling fans will not be able to operate efficiently. Periodically vacuum and blow out any dust that has lodged in a woodworking machine's motor. In particular, this will benefit the starter switch, which is probably the weakest link on single-phase induction motors. This switch is designed to operate only momentarily when the motor is switched on, and then to be forced outward along the shaft of the rotor by the centrifugal force of the motor. If sawdust prevents this movement, the switch will continue to receive power, and the starter windings inside the stator will burn out. □

## KEEP YOUR MOTOR CLEAN



*In a dusty workshop, dirt eventually can clog motors that are not totally enclosed, leading to overheating and possibly starter-switch failure. Use a shop vacuum to remove the accumulated dust.*

# Can a homebuilding magazine make you a better woodworker?



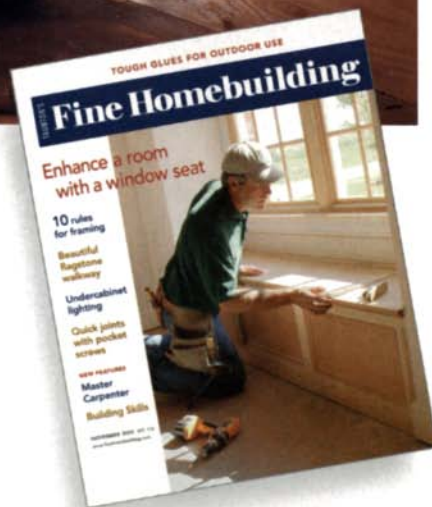
It sure can, if it's *Fine Homebuilding*.

Here, professional builders share hands-on expertise that dovetails perfectly with what you find in *Fine Woodworking*. Get in on essential trade secrets for building bookcases, entertainment centers, cabinets, dining alcoves, and more. And learn proven methods for trimming out a house, renovating a period room, remodeling a kitchen, installing doors, crown moldings, and decorative panels.

There is also plenty in *Fine Homebuilding* to inspire you: great designs, innovative ideas, new materials and tools. Expert know-how helps you master timeless techniques, sharpen your skills, and find creative solutions when working wood. And all of it from experienced pros.

Reply today by sending back  
the attached card.

Call toll free 1-800-888-8286  
and mention offer code M280009 or  
visit us at: [finehomebuilding.com/fw](http://finehomebuilding.com/fw)



The Taunton Press  
Inspiration for hands-on living®

**Fine Homebuilding®**

## COMMERCIAL CASEWORK

**CabParts** produces easily assembled, frameless, modular cabinet boxes, custom-sized casework, drawer boxes, adjustable shelves, slab-type doors and drawer fronts plus a modular, wall-hung closet/storage/organizer system. Service nationwide has been provided since 1987.

The **CabParts** product line is specifically suited for use by Cabinet and Millwork Shops, General and Remodeling Contractors, Building Maintenance Departments, Design/Build Firms, Architects and Project Managers.

Outsourcing your casework requirements from **CabParts** means:

- increased profitability
- higher productivity
- better cost control
- consistent quality

## RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK

# CabParts.

Your Casework Made Easy



[www.cabparts.com](http://www.cabparts.com)

Confirmat Joinery Dowel Joinery



When properly assembled & installed CabParts meets or exceeds AWI custom grade

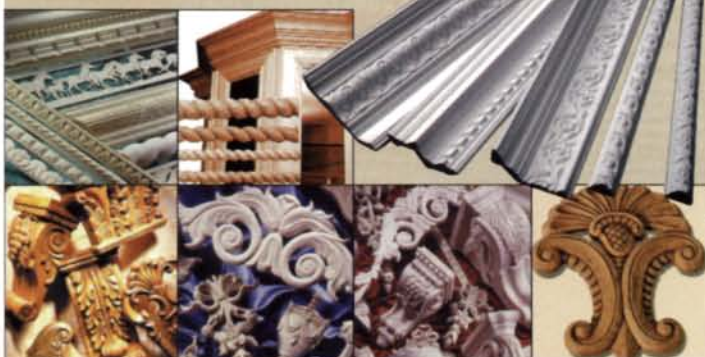
For the full story on CabParts or to download a FREE digital catalog please visit our website [www.cabparts.com](http://www.cabparts.com) or give us a call at 970.241.7682



READER SERVICE NO. 54

# The Woodworker's Dream!

Over 40,000 Woodworking Products



**BEST PRICES • WIDEST SELECTION ALL FROM STOCK**

**Call For Our FREE 900+ Page Catalog!**

**Outwater Plastics Industries, Inc.**

1-888-772-1400 (Catalog Requests)  
1-800-631-8375 (Sales & Product Information)  
1-800-888-3315 (Fax)  
New Jersey • Arizona • Canada  
[www.outwater.com](http://www.outwater.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 55

**NEW!**

## The Leigh FMT Mortise and Tenon Jig

Create mortises and tenons in one quick, easy setup!

Unique patented guide system • Joints from a tiny 1/16" x 3/32" to 1/2" x 5" in stock up to 3" x 5 1/2" • Easy fingertip adjustment of joint tightness, recordable and repeatable • Make angled and compound angled joints • Rout perfectly aligned double, triple and quadruple joints • Use virtually any plunge router • Uses 1/2" shank cutters • Cam-action speed-clamps • Integral dust port for vacuum



Call For Your Free Leigh FMT Brochure Today! 1-800-663-8932  
Leigh Industries Ltd., PO Box 357, Port Coquitlam, BC, Canada V3C 4K6  
Tel. 604 464-2700 Fax 604 464-7404 Web [www.leighjigs.com](http://www.leighjigs.com)



**Keep your Fine Woodworking back issues looking brand new.**



Store your treasured copies of *Fine Woodworking* in slipcases for easy reference again and again! Bound in dark blue and embossed in gold, each case holds more than a year's worth of *Fine Woodworking*. Only \$8.95 (\$24.95 for 3, \$49.95 for 6). Add \$1.50 per case for P&H. Outside the U.S., add \$3.50 each (U.S. funds only). CT residents add 6% sales tax.

To place an order using your credit card, call **1-800-888-8286** or send your order and payment to: Taunton Direct, Inc., P.O. Box 5507, Newtown, CT 06470-5507

**ESP**

...for a BREATH of FRESH AIR



INTRODUCING 3M 8000 N95  
• For Light Duty or Short Duration Applications  
• 30 Respirators per Box  
As low as \$11.50/Box



**NEW!! MAGNIFYING SAFETY GLASSES**  
Bi-focals AND Whole Lenses  
Diopters from 1.0 to 3.0 Power  
\$14.95

**NEW—AIRSHIELD by Trend**



**AIR CIRCULATING FACE SHIELD**  
• 4 Hr. or 8 Hr. Battery Time  
• Visor Pivots Up and Down  
• Particulate Pre-Filter & Main Filters

**ENVIRO-SAFETY PRODUCTS**  
Toll Free: (800) 637-6606 • Fax: (559) 625-5595  
See Our Products At: [www.envirosafetyproducts.com](http://www.envirosafetyproducts.com)

**Cutting Wood? Want a planer cut  
with a sawblade?**

**TRY ASTRA WOOD EVERLAST**

BLADE	PRICE	DIA.	TEETH	RIP CUT	CROSSCUT
AGP1040	\$70	10"	40	Excellent*	Very good*
AGP1060	\$90	10"	60	<b>NEW ITEM</b>	<b>NEW ITEM</b>

\*Source: Fine Woodworking: M/A '02, "10-in Combination Tablesaw Blades"

**Excellent results don't have to cost more.**

**EVERLAST**  
SAW & GARRIBE TOOLS, INC.

1478 Rail Head Blvd. • Naples, FL 34110

**1-800-387-5278**

Fax: (239) 596-9616

[www.everlastsaw.com](http://www.everlastsaw.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 136

**Lie-Nielsen  
TOOLWORKS  
INC.**

[www.lie-nielsen.com](http://www.lie-nielsen.com)

*Heirloom Quality Tools*

1-800-327-2520



*Low Angle Adjustable Mouth Block Plane \$150*

READER SERVICE NO. 73

**Compact. Powerful. Complete.**

**Binks Raptor™ spray finishing systems -  
ready to use, right out of the box.**

- 18:1 Ratio Pump
- AA1500 Air Assist Airless Spray Gun
- Air & Fluid Hose
- Cart or Wall Mount
- Extremely Durable
- Reduced Overspray
- Reduced Emissions
- Superior Finish Quality

**For a Binks Distributor  
near you, call...**

**1-800-992-4657**

**BINKS®**

[www.binks.com](http://www.binks.com)



© 2003 ITW Industrial Finishing

READER SERVICE NO. 191



**Titebond®**  
*Wood Glues*

**The Woodworker's  
Choice for Generations.**

[titebond.com](http://titebond.com) 1-800-347-GLUE

READER SERVICE NO. 197

## Work at the right height to reduce pain, improve control

**W**oodworkers come in all different sizes, yet machine tools and manufactured benches adhere to standard heights. Some time or another, your body probably has let you know with sore joints or an aching back that some of these standard heights don't suit all tasks.

To get the best out of your shop you need to consider not only what you do to turn lumber and sheet goods into finished products but also how your body interacts with the shop environment. A mismatch between your body and a tool or bench increases the chance you'll develop pain and means you're wasting energy to get the job done.

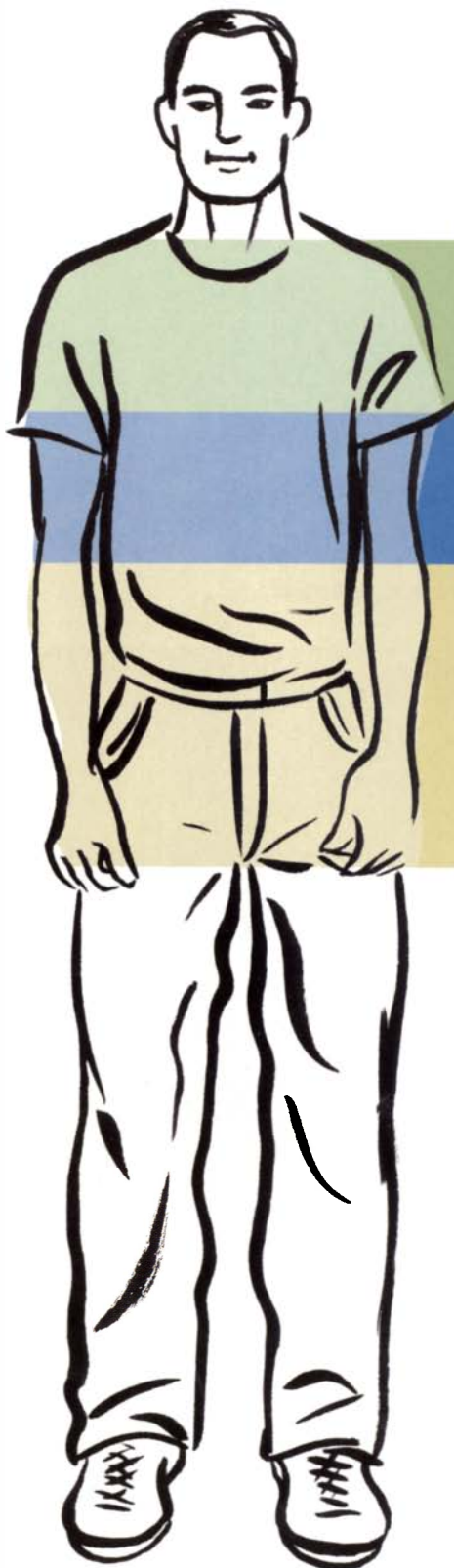
There is not one height that is correct for all woodworking activities. Consequently, your workspace or the way you work likely will need modifications to accommodate every task in the life cycle of a woodworking project.

To determine the appropriate work heights, let's look at woodworking tasks in three categories: power tasks, finesse tasks, and precision tasks. Power tasks are those activities that primarily require the body to produce force, such as when handplaning a board flat. Finesse tasks require near equal amounts of force and control, such as when cutting dovetails or tenons. Finally, tasks in the precision category require a great deal of control and visual input, as is the case with carving a ball-and-claw foot. Each of these categories is safest for your body if performed at a different height.

Once you've identified the proper height zone for a specific task, raise or lower worksurfaces, the workpiece, the tools, or your body to reduce discomfort.

### Power tasks are best done at a low height

Rough stock preparation typically falls into the power category. Ripping a sheet of ¾-in.-thick medium-density fiberboard (MDF), dimensioning a rough board with a handplane, and machine-jointing a



### Woodworking tasks fall into three zones

#### PRECISION ZONE

Much of the detail work done in the shop, such as fine carving and paring joints, falls into the precision zone. At this height, which ranges from your midchest to your shoulders, you will have a good view of the work and have excellent control over your tools.

#### FINESSE ZONE

Tasks that require the use of force as well as strict control over your tools fall into the finesse zone, which spans from your elbows to just below the middle of your chest. Activities in this category are as diverse as sawing dovetails and tenons, navigating a handheld router, and applying a finish.

#### POWER ZONE

Tasks such as handplaning rough material or pushing material through a machine tool are power tasks. They are best performed in the zone that spans from your knuckles to just below your elbows. In this height range you can lean into the work and take advantage of your body's momentum.

board all are examples of activities that involve the use of force.

The standard method of determining the correct bench height for power tasks is to stand with your arms at your sides and your wrists fully extended. The height range from your knuckles to just below your elbows is suitable for performing power tasks.

In this category, body weight is an advantage, especially when using certain hand tools. Therefore, it is best to work at

# X POINT THE POWER OF PRECISION



**SPECIAL OFFER!**

**POWER TOOL SET-UP GAUGE**  
Reg Price ~~\$119.99~~  
Sale **\$99.95!!!**

This Special Includes Free Shipping (\$10.95 Value)\*

#78401

## USE IT TO:

- Set table saw blade angles
- Align the blade & rip fence with the miter slot
- Set miter gauge angles
- Check table saw arbors for run-out
- Check shop squares for accuracy
- Check band saw tables for squareness to the blade



**Free Catalog!**  
**1-800-345-2396**  
**www.hartvilletool.com**

Mention Code FW167X when ordering. \*Free Shipping Within Continental US Only. \*\*Ohio Residents Only Add 6.5% Sales Tax. Not Valid With Any Other Offer. Good Through 1-31-04

READER SERVICE NO. 210

## Professional Finishing Made Easy!



Turbine & Compressor HVLP  
Spray Guns & Equipment

Ideal for the hobbyist and  
the professional!

Ask about our unique  
Variable Speed Turbines!

Call today for a distributor near you!

**TURBINAIRE** 1-800-866-HVLP

www.turbinaire.com • sales@turbinaire.com

As used by  
Scott Phillips



READER SERVICE NO. 144

## Wood Moisture Meters

Wood moisture is a crucial factor that determines usefulness and stability of wood. Pin-type moisture testers measure surface and core moisture to avoid cracking, warping and delamination.

The versatile mini-Ligno meters from Lignomat are ideal for veneer, heavy timbers and curved plywood; a favorite for professional woodworkers and serious hobbyists. Ask about our free brochure for pin and pinless moisture meters.

800/227-2105 **Lignomat USA Ltd.**  
503/257-8957 PO 30145, Portland OR 97294



READER SERVICE NO. 13

Long Island's only  
**WOODWORKING  
SHOW 2004**



Presented by

**THE LONG ISLAND  
WOODWORKERS' CLUB**

www.liwoodworkers.org

Saturday & Sunday - April 17th & 18th  
10:00 AM to 5:00 PM



Frank Klausz Free Seminars  
Ernie Conover Member Exhibition  
Mario Rodriguez Tool Vendors  
Strother Purdy Toy Workshop  
and more! Crafts, and more!

ADMISSION: \$7.00 (children under 12 free)  
New Location: **HOFSTRA UNIVERSITY ARENA**  
Hempstead Turnpike (Rte 24)  
Hempstead, Long Island NY

Visit our website for directions \$1.00 discount with this ad.

READER SERVICE NO. 168

Beauty & Tone  
at its Finest

## BUILD A GUITAR

~Fine Woods & Tools for Guitarbuilders~

Luthiers Mercantile International  
www.lmii.com • 800-477-4437 • Free Catalog

READER SERVICE NO. 28



by Lewis Judy

photo by: Eric Grizwald

**NORTHWEST TIMBER**

WWW.NWTIMBER.COM



READER SERVICE NO. 116

## 4-WAY MONEY-MAKER!

• Molds • Planes • Sands • Saws



Now, turn a \$5.00 rough board into \$75.00 worth of finished trim in just minutes! Make over 350 standard moldings, tongue & groove, picture frame stock, any custom design.

FREE  
30-DAY  
TRIAL!

QUICKLY CONVERTS  
from Planer/Molder to  
Drum Sander or power-  
feed Multi-Blade Rip Saw!

12", 16"  
& 25" Models Available

## Variable Feed Makes the Difference!

Just a twist of the dial adjusts the Woodmaster from 70 to over 1,000 cuts per inch. Produces a glass-smooth finish on tricky grain patterns no other molder/planer can handle. Plenty of American-made "muscle" to handle money-saving, "straight-from-the-sawmill" lumber. *Five-Year Warranty.*

Made in USA

Call Today for **FREE FACTS!**  
**800-821-6651 (ext. PJ7)**

Woodmaster Tools 1431 N. Topping Ave. Kansas City, MO 64120

READER SERVICE NO. 158

# Rules of Thumb (continued)



**POWER ZONE**

**Plane in the power zone.** Preparing stock with machine tools, such as the surface planer, occurs in the power zone. The tool should sit on a base that puts it at the proper height.



a height that allows you to lean into the work. When using machine tools, less lifting is required at this low height.

**Modify tools and benches to the right height**—Once you determine your power zone, you may find that you need to raise the tool or the workbench to match this height; one simple solution is to make a sturdy box that shims the worksurface to a higher elevation.

For some woodworkers, lowering a worksurface may be difficult or impossible. Sinking a tool by placing it lower than the floor is one option, although difficult. It could be done in a situation where a shop is being designed and built. Shortening the tool base also is an option but may require some time and expense. Alternatively, you can build a platform to stand on that elevates you to the height of the tool. However, a platform can become a hazard when you're moving around the shop.

In either case—too low or too high—you may want to consider modifying a tool base or workbench to achieve the ideal height for power tasks.

## Finesse work is done at a midrange height

Finesse tasks combine the elements of power tasks with precision tasks, relying on physical force as well as on control and visual input from the woodworker. These tasks include sawing dovetails and tenons; chopping mortises manually or with a machine; rough carving; most cuts on a band-

saw (which is why a bandsaw's table is designed higher than a tablesaw's); using a spokeshave with a shavehorse; handheld routing; and most sanding and finishing tasks. These tasks are best accomplished in the range that starts at your elbows and ends just below the middle of your chest. This position gives you a better view of the work without compromising your body's ability to produce power and control with a tool.

**Raise your work or lower your work zone**—One example of adapting your shop for finesse work can be seen in Pat Warner's routing bench (*FWW* #129, p. 72). His bench is 40 in. high so that he doesn't have to lean over to see his router cut into



**FINESSE ZONE**



**Raise your router to the finesse zone.** Handheld routing is a finesse task and should be carried out at a height just above your elbows. A raised support for your workbench is an easy solution.

a workpiece. I have a support that sits atop my workbench that allows me to rout at the proper height (see the photo below).

Other simple solutions are achieved by properly orienting the work in your bench vise with the use of a couple of easily made jigs. This would allow you, for example, to raise the stock to be dovetailed while still fully supporting it to limit vibration. I also use a raised bench hook for some marking and shoulder-plane tasks.

## Precision work takes place at the highest height

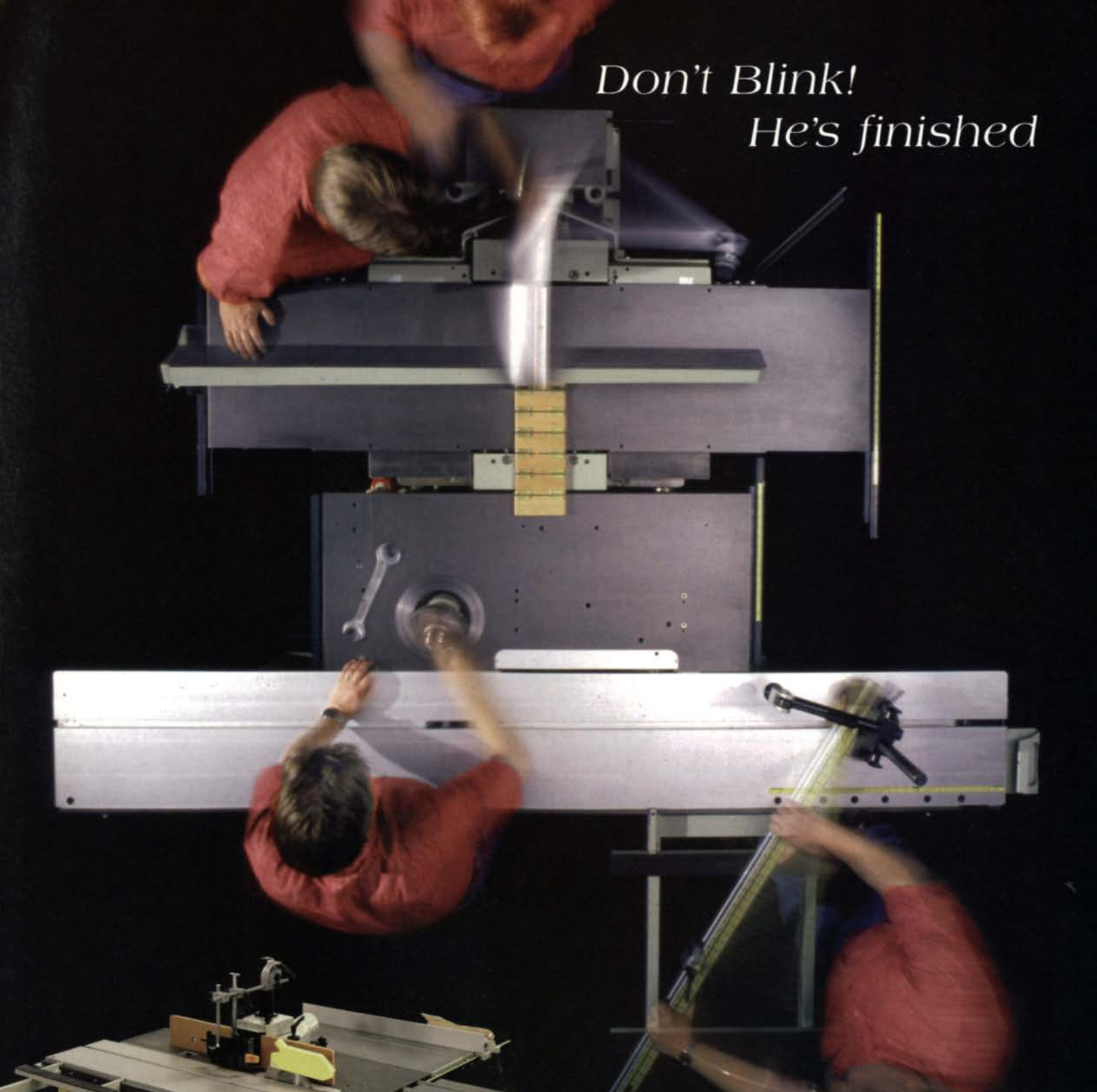
Precision work encompasses much of the detail work done in the shop. Examples include end-stage carving, paring joints, final joint-fitting, and freehand use of routers and laminate trimmers.

The proper position for most precision tasks is from midchest to shoulder height. This is an ideal range because these tasks require a great deal of visual input. Having the work in a close visual range is important. Additionally, proper shop lighting is critical for these tasks.

**Make a jig or vise to hold work high**—I've come up with several jigs in my shop that allow me to hold workpieces high above my standard workbench so that I can perform precision tasks. The goal is holding the work well, exposing it to your eyes, and not creating any awkward postures in the arms.

Wood-carvers have their own solutions. Because their work-height requirement is significantly different than normal bench





*Don't Blink!  
He's finished*

*The ultimate European Combination machine.*

Call for a free video

800.234.1976

**LAGUNA TOOLS**

Innovation, Imagination and Invention at work

[www.lagunatools.com](http://www.lagunatools.com)

17101 Murphy Ave., Irvine, CA 92614

READER SERVICE NO. 100

TOOLS & SHOPS 2004 105

# Rules of Thumb (continued)



**PRECISION ZONE**



**Lower your body to the precision zone when you can't raise the work.** Sitting on a stool while you work will put you at the right height for detail carving at the workbench.

height, many carvers tend to have a separate bench or vise set up for carving.

If you cannot raise the work accordingly, sit on a stool that positions you correctly at the bench. Doing so lowers your precision zone to the level of the bench. The only caveat is that a seated position limits the force you can produce with your lower body and requires your upper torso and arms to exert more effort.

## Customize your shop for common work heights

It is likely that your shop has many height-deficient work areas, but you have to prioritize when it comes to solving these problems. First, address tasks that cause physical discomfort. You might recognize these as the tasks that end with the statement: "Gee, my back kills me when I do this for more than an hour." Focus next on those tasks you spend the most time on, including big jobs that require repetitive tasks. Risk of injury is a function of how bad the situation is and how long you spend doing the task. □

**Finish What You Started!**

With **ProCoat** Water Based Wood Finishes

- Very Durable
- Interior/Exterior
- Non-Yellowing
- Fast Drying
- Mild Odor

**Ideal for woodwork, cabinets, furniture, floors, toys and more!**

Call today for a distributor near you!  
**ProCoat** 1-800-866-4857  
[www.turbinaire.com/procoat](http://www.turbinaire.com/procoat)

READER SERVICE NO. 145

**Build Your Own Boat!**

The world's most popular kit boats! Choose from 30 beautiful, easy-to-build kits.

Call 410 267 0137 or visit:  
**www.cleboats.com**

READER SERVICE NO. 133

**Who Says Good Help Is Hard To Find?**

Home shop or industrial plant, cabinet making, v-carving or 3D crafts – ShopBot CNC tools are perfect for every woodworker!

Starts at **\$4,995.00**

[www.shopbottools.com](http://www.shopbottools.com)  
**888-680-4466**

**ShopBot** Cut what you Imagine!

READER SERVICE NO. 112

PRECISION WOODWORKING TOOLS

**GENERAL GENERAL INTERNATIONAL**

EXCEPTIONAL PRICING SERVICE & VALUE  
 MADE IN CANADA

The only High Quality, Heavy Duty Line of Woodworking Equipment Table saws, Jointers, Mortisers, Lathes, Drill Presses and accessories including Modulus Scoring Saw Attachment

..... [www.woodworktools.com](http://www.woodworktools.com) .....

**ASHMAN TECHNICAL LTD.**  
 351 Nash Rd., N. Hamilton, Ontario, CANADA L8H 7P4  
 Phone: 905-560-2400 • FAX: 905-560-2404 • 1-800-668-5721

READER SERVICE NO. 120

**ARROWMONT**  
 SCHOOL OF ARTS & CRAFTS

Spring 2004 ~ March 14 - April 17

One-Week Workshops  
 in Woodworking & Woodturning  
 State-of-the-Art Woodshop  
 Internationally Known Instructors

556 Parkway • Gatlinburg, TN 37738  
**865-436-5860**  
[www.arrowmont.org](http://www.arrowmont.org)

READER SERVICE NO. 196

# The Art of Routing



## CREATE YOUR OWN MASTERPIECE

### You can make this picture frame with these four bits!

Viper premium carbide router bits are designed and manufactured by experienced woodworkers who understand the perfection you expect from your tools. That's why Viper router bits are precisely engineered to consistently deliver clean, smooth, burn-free cuts. Our bits feature strong, durable, precisely sharpened carbide; bodies turned from solid high-strength steel; and anti-stick, heat-resistant coating. And with an extensive range of profiles to choose from, you'll find the right Viper bits for all your works of art.



**WITH VIPER CARBIDE ROUTER BITS**

1-800-828-9000  
[www.oldham-usa.com](http://www.oldham-usa.com)

# it's a piece of cake



A knuckle joint is quite difficult to make by hand – keeping the finger joints square and well fitting. The WoodRat's job is to make it easy without compromising the quality of the work.

## WoodRat®

call toll free 1-877-WOODRAT

and check out [www.woodrat.com](http://www.woodrat.com)

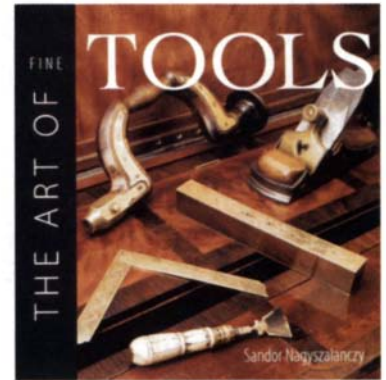
READER SERVICE NO. 167

FROM THE TAUNTON PRESS

## The Art of Fine Tools

by Sandor Nagyszalanczy

Peruse tools of ancient significance, remarkable precision, and tools with incredible artistic decoration and design. Over 300 lush photographs depict the beauty and the classic designs of these tools.



"[The Art of Fine Tools] is a truly beautiful work from every standpoint. . . Any lover of fine tools, especially old fine tools, will be hard put to be without it. . . A very fine Christmas present for any tool freak."

—Atlanta Journal-Constitution

SOFTCOVER, 240 PAGES, 300 COLOR PHOTOS, ISBN: 1-56158-361-8, PROD # 070493 \$24.95

To order, call **1-800-888-8286**  
or order on our web site at  
[www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com)



### PORTABLE HANDHELD BAND SAW MILL

- \* WEIGHS 45 POUNDS
- \* 9 X 14" THROAT
- \* 20" DIA. LOG CAPACITY
- \* CHAINSAW POWERED
- \* OPTIONAL CARRIAGE

**ONLY \$1489**  
w/o chainsaw

**978-657-5636**

Better Built Corp.  
789 Woburn St. Dept. FW  
Wilmington, MA 01887

FREE Brochure Download  
[www.ripsaw.com](http://www.ripsaw.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 182

## TIMES CHANGE. TOOLS CHANGE.

New FlexGrip™ form-fitted, high dexterity work gloves give your hands the protection and flexible support they need to put in full day at full throttle. They're breathable, washable, and ergonomically designed for specific tasks— from carpentry and demolition, to box handling, landscaping, and cold weather jobs. So no matter what kind of work you do, now there's a FlexGrip Glove that'll help you do it better.

Think outside the toolbox.

(800) 325-0455 EXT. 109  
[www.ciccustomleathercraft.com](http://www.ciccustomleathercraft.com)

©2003 Custom LeatherCraft Mfg. Co., Inc. South Gate, CA 90280

READER SERVICE NO. 94

RICHARD WEDLER'S U.S. Pat#5,299,609

## THE MICRO FENCE SYSTEM

Turn your router into the precision milling machine it's capable of being. Straight-line, circular & elliptical setups.



Free CD or Video

MICRO FENCE MF

1-800-480-MICRO-(6427)  
[www.microfence.com](http://www.microfence.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 202

## Routerbits.com

Bits, Blades, Books & more...

Shop Online For

Whiteside Router Bits Fisch Forstner Bits  
Bench Dog Systematic Saw Blades  
Books & Accessories

Or Call Toll Free  
**1-888-811-7269**  
[www.Routerbits.com](http://www.Routerbits.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 74

**STATEMENT OF OWNERSHIP, MANAGEMENT AND CIRCULATION**  
(Required by 39 U.S.C. 3685)

1. Publication Title: *Fine Woodworking*. 2. Publication No. 0361-3453. 3. Filing Date: Sept. 23, 2003. 4. Issue Frequency: Bimonthly. 5. No. of Issues Published Annually: 7. 6. Annual Subscription Price: \$34.95. 7. Complete Mailing Address of Known Office of Publication: 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, Fairfield County, CT 06470-5506. 8. Complete Mailing Address of Headquarters or General Business Office of Publisher: 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. 9. Full Names and Complete Mailing Addresses of Publisher, Editor, and Managing Editor: Tim Schreiner, Publisher, 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506; Anatole Burkin, Editor, 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506; Matthew Teague, Managing Editor, 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. 10. Owner: The Taunton Press, Inc., 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506; Stockholder: Taunton, Inc., 63 S. Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. 11. Known Bondholders, Mortgagees, and Other Security Holders: None. 12. Not Applicable. 13. Publication Name: *Fine Woodworking*. 14. Issue Date for Circulation Data Below: July/August 2003. 15. Extent and Nature of Circulation:

	Average No. Copies Each Issue During Preceding 12 Months	Actual No. Copies of Single Issue Published Nearest to Filing Date
A. Total no. copies	445,522	461,424
B. Paid and/or requested circulation		
1. Paid and/or requested outside-county mail subscriptions	200,881	200,363
2. Paid and/or requested in-county mail subscriptions	0	0
3. Sales through dealers and carriers, street vendors, and courier through the USPS	92,973	82,752
4. Other classes mailed through the USPS	0	0
C. Total paid and/or requested circulation	293,854	283,115
D. Free distribution by mail		
1. Outside county	4,574	6,841
2. In county	0	0
3. Other classes mailed through the USPS	0	0
E. Free distribution outside the mail	3,740	6,059
F. Total free distribution	8,314	12,900
G. Total distribution	302,168	296,015
H. Copies not distributed	143,354	165,409
I. Total	445,522	461,424
Percent paid and/or requested circulation	97.2%	95.6%

16. This statement of ownership will be printed in the Winter 2003/2004 issue of this publication. 17. I certify that all information furnished on this form is true and complete. Signature and title: Tim Schreiner, Publisher.

# Step Up

Step up to our TEMPEST 14" impeller cyclone – the most powerful, efficient, economical, quiet, cleanest, & completely configured dust collection system in its class!

TEMPEST cyclones configurations start as low as \$495.

**Features include:**

- Full 2-year warranty
- Small footprint, fits under an 8' ceiling
- Ideal for ductwork systems
- Available with either 2HP or 3HP motor blower
- Aerodynamic 14" aluminum impeller
- 6" diameter input port w/ neutral vane intake
- Engineered for efficient separation
- 5 micron bag or 1/2 micron filter cartridges available
- Includes wall mounting brackets

Call 1-800-377-7297

**PennState**  
Industries

"The Dust Collection Specialists"

www.pennstateind.com

Call for our free 56 page color catalog. It's filled with dust collectors and accessories, lathes, pen project kits, and much more!

READER SERVICE NO. 170

## MULTI-FENCE SYSTEM

**ac·cu·rate** *ˌvɑːkjəˈrɛt \ adj*  
1: careful and exact 2: free from mistakes or errors, precise 3: the HTC Multi-Fence System



### ACCURATE BY DEFINITION.

When you need accuracy, dial it in with the HTC Multi-Fence System. One full turn of the Micro-Adjustor knob moves the fence 1/16". Half a turn moves 1/32", and so on down to less than 1/128". Now that's accurate! That's HTC.



For your nearest dealer and FREE catalog, call toll-free 1-800-624-2027



© HTC Products, Inc. 2003

READER SERVICE NO. 37

## Service

Those who shop with us know we go to great lengths to ensure the experience is pleasant and satisfying. A less obvious service perhaps is our commitment to using our depth of expertise and resources to design and build products that are functionally superior, fairly priced, and built to serve for decades. Much to the financial guy's chagrin, we don't just capitalize on the best-sellers, we commit to full ranges of products, as demonstrated with our line of planes.



Call for a free catalog 1-800-683-8170 or visit us online. [www.leevalley.com](http://www.leevalley.com)

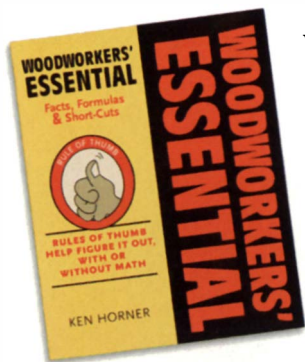
Back: Scraping & #6 Fore Planes. Front left: Low-Angle Smooth & Medium Shoulder Planes. Center: Standard, Low-Angle & Apron Block Planes. Right: #5-1/4W, #4-1/2 & #4 Bench Planes. Priced from \$65.00 to \$219.00. Patent pending.

**Lee Valley & Veritas**

Lee Valley Tools Ltd., 814 Proctor Ave., Ogdensburg, N.Y. 13669

READER SERVICE NO. 216

# Reviews

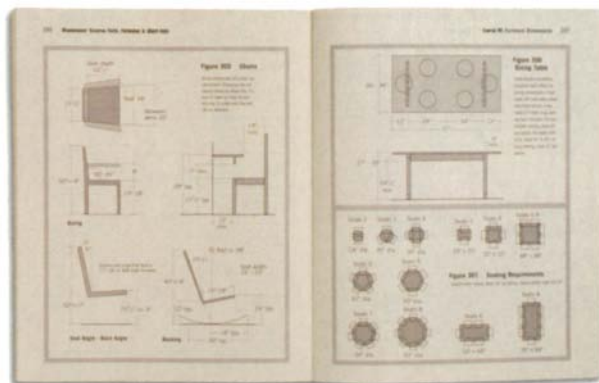


**Woodworkers' Essential Facts, Formulas & Short-Cuts** by Ken Horner. Cambium Press, 800-238-7724, 2003. \$24.95 paperback; 312 pp.

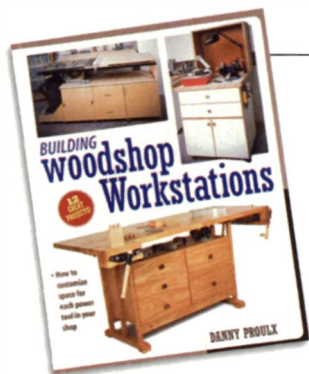
This book doesn't try to draw a line between formulas and facts; it is designed to be a comprehensive reference for woodshop problem-solving. It does address many of the math problems woodworkers will encounter. A nice feature is that for all of these—scaling drawings; proportioning; calculating board feet, pulley sizes, and miter angles; even converting fractions and decimals—the author offers an alternative solution for

the math-challenged, usually a graphic technique or a table. However, Ken Horner's book goes far beyond math. There are comprehensive sections on drawing and layout, covering geometric shapes and how to draw and divide them evenly. There also are valuable chapters on standard furniture dimensions, wood glues, and dust collection. The two-dimensional drawings are somewhat crude, but the information is there for the careful reader. Although it overlooks a few common woodworking problems, this is a very useful and comprehensive shop reference.

—Asa Christiana, senior editor



**Beyond the math.** Horner's book not only explains formulas and drafting techniques but also ranges into valuable subjects like standard furniture dimensions.



**Building Woodshop Workstations** by Danny Proulx. Popular Woodworking Books, [www.popularwoodworking.com](http://www.popularwoodworking.com), 2002. \$24.99 paperback; 128 pp.

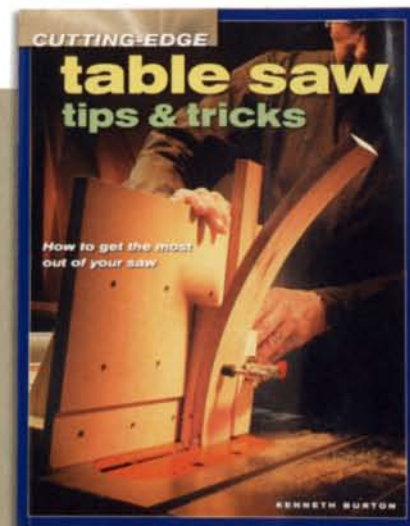
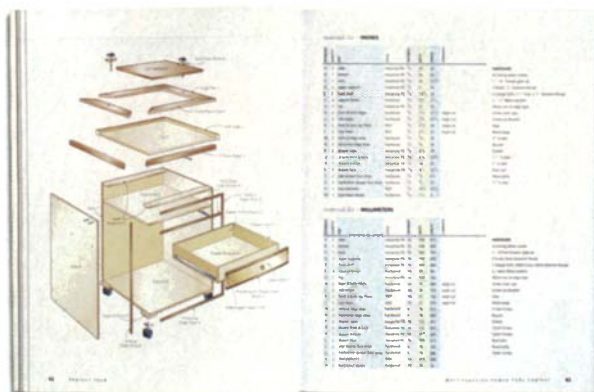
Danny Proulx, a 30-year veteran of the cabinetmaking trade, has put together a dozen examples of small-shop workstations to help readers maximize space and increase shop efficiency. Each project—such as the practical workbench, power miter-saw station, router-table cabinet, drill-press center, mobile workbench and tool cabinet—is a no-nonsense design suited to a

specific purpose. Proulx provides exploded drawings (showing all of the parts and how they fit together), materials lists (including hardware), and step-by-step advice on how to construct each workstation.

Many woodworkers are capable of solving their own storage problems. But for the beginner who is putting together a new shop, this book offers solid tips and useful visuals.

—William Duckworth, associate editor

**Upgrade your shop.** Proulx's book presents cabinets for most shop machines, with clear drawings and step-by-step instructions.



**Cutting-Edge Table Saw Tips & Tricks: How to get the most out of your saw** by Kenneth Burton. Popular Woodworking Books, 2003. \$24.99 paperback; 128 pp.

When a board has to be ripped or crosscut, most woodworkers go straight to the tablesaw. However, the tablesaw isn't limited to those two common cuts. With a little know-how and a few jigs, you can use the tablesaw to perform a long list of other woodworking tasks. Kenneth Burton has compiled a good many of those between the covers of this book. The author holds a bachelor's degree from the Rochester Institute of Technology's School for American Crafts and has been a professional woodworker for some 20 years.

Using a balanced mix of high-quality color photos and well-written text, Burton does a good job of getting his point across. Along with all of the tips and tricks, each chapter has plans for jigs and accessories that make a tablesaw more productive. The book's last section offers three furniture projects that rely on the author's techniques.

Advanced woodworkers probably won't find much new ground broken here. But those at the beginner or intermediate levels will uncover plenty of useful information to take to the shop. Watch out for a few out-of-sequence photos, and also two examples where a jig or push block should have been used to support the stock safely (pp. 58 and 114, respectively).

—Tom Begnal, associate editor

# FELDER'S **new** Series 700

**Built in Austria - designed for the American woodworker**

The best European combination machine has been enhanced specifically to compliment North American woodworking techniques. The new 700 series has larger more robust fences, dado capacity with revolutionary dado cutter-head, plus all of FELDER'S previous outstanding features. The best of both worlds in one machine!

FELDER, building woodworking solutions for the professional and everyday woodworker.

[www.felderusa.com](http://www.felderusa.com)



The new X-Roll sliding table with patented design. Stronger, smoother and the most accurate ever. YOU HAVE TO FEEL IT TO BELIEVE IT!

Now with revolutionary Dado - specially designed for the American Woodworker.

NEW Crosscut fence engineered for exceptional accuracy and stability.

There are at least 20 more reasons to choose FELDER. Do you know them?



Call now for more details and your new 160 page catalog  
Call Toll Free

**866-792-5288**

## FELDER

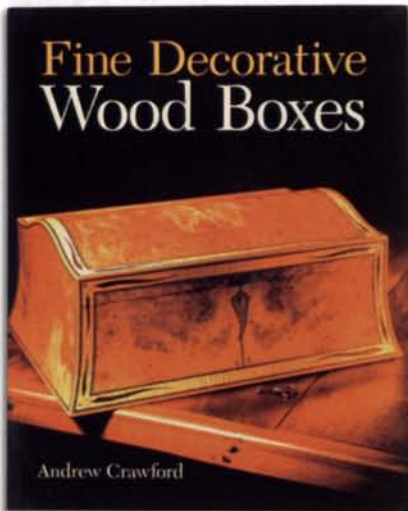
*... und Sie machen mehr aus Holz!*

**FELDER USA**

2 Lukens Drive, Suite 300 EAST  
New Castle, DE 19720  
866-792-5288

WEST 1851 Enterprise Blvd.  
West Sacramento, CA 95691  
800-572-0061

FELDER offers a complete range of Sliding table saws, Shapers, Planers, Jointers and Full combination machines!



**Fine Decorative Wood Boxes** by Andrew Crawford. Sterling Publishing, [www.sterlingpub.com](http://www.sterlingpub.com), 2003. \$19.95 paperback; 144 pp.

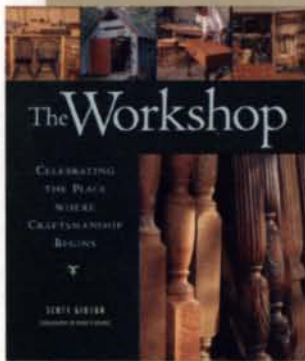
First published in 1998 without the word "Wood" in the title, Andrew Crawford's book remains a treasure trove of information. The book starts with an overview of the tools, techniques, and materials common to all box-making. It then describes how to build 10 boxes, each unique in look and construction. You need to be a detail-loving woodworker to copy these boxes exactly, but even if you adopt just one or two of the author's methods, the price of this book will be money well spent.

—Mark Schofield, associate editor



**High-end box-making.** With clear descriptions and photos, *Fine Decorative Wood Boxes* covers many high-end box-making techniques, such as veneering, laminating, carving, and inlaying.

## NEW FROM THE TAUNTON PRESS



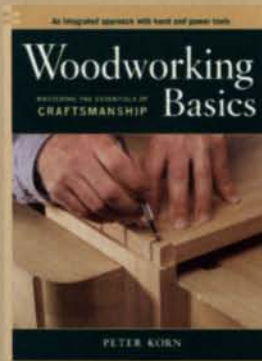
The Taunton Press is introducing a long list of woodworking books this fall and winter, covering a broad range of topics. The following are just a few highlights. For more titles and information, go to [www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com).

**The Workshop** by Scott Gibson. \$34.95 hardcover; 208 pp.

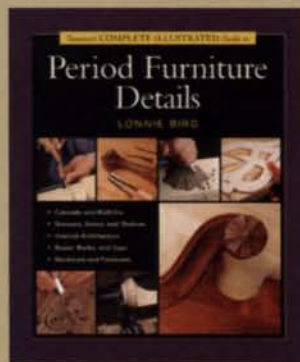
With more than 290 color photos, this book is a guided tour of more than 30 outstanding workshops, including those of furniture makers, boat-builders, turners, and others. You'll learn how the shops evolved and how they suit the needs of the woodworkers who own them.

**Smart Workshop Solutions** by Paul Anthony. \$19.95 softcover; 176 pp. This book is a collection of great ideas for shop accessories, workstations, jigs, and storage solutions. Included are detailed drawings, step-by-step instructions, and photos.

**Wood Finishing Fixes** by Michael Dresdner. \$19.95 softcover; 144 pp. You'll find this book is long on solutions, not theory, covering the entire finishing process from sanding to final polish.

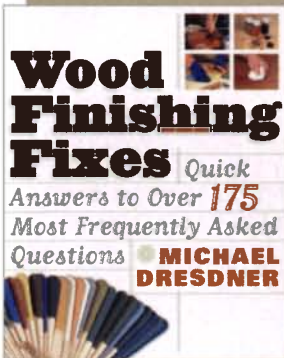
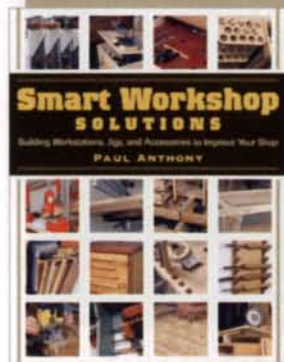


**Woodworking Basics** by Peter Korn. \$19.95 softcover; 208 pp. Peter Korn presents an approach to learning woodworking that has proven successful for hundreds of people who have attended his prominent school over the past 10 years. Included are two projects: a small bench and a side table with a door and drawer.



**TAUNTON'S COMPLETE ILLUSTRATED GUIDES**  
**Period Furniture Details** by Lonnie Bird. \$27 softcover; 144 pp.  
**Choosing & Installing Hardware** by Bob Settich. \$29.95 softcover; 224 pp.

Written by a dream team of professional woodworkers, Taunton's *Complete Illustrated Guides* help the reader find information quickly. Like earlier volumes on furniture and cabinet construction, joinery, and shaping wood, these two new guides attempt to be the most authoritative and comprehensive references available on their subjects. In the coming months, look for subsequent volumes on finishing and box-making. —A.C.





**YESTERMORROW**  
DESIGN|BUILD SCHOOL

Over 100 Courses Year Round  
For novices & professionals:  
Cabinets & Built-ins  
Chair Building  
Woodturning  
Timber Framing  
Joinery  
& More...

Free Catalog  
888-496-5541  
www.yestermorrow.org

Courses for all ages  
& skill levels, from  
2 days to 2 weeks.

WARREN, VERMONT

READER SERVICE NO. 67

**GENERAL**  
"A Tradition of Excellence"

**AGAZZANI**

"This is a truly great tool..."  
Mark Duginske, Author  
"The Bandsaw Handbook"

**EAGLE TOOLS**

3027 Treadwell Street  
Los Angeles, CA 90065  
800-203-0023  
www.eagle-tools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 24

**FREE!**  
Furniture Parts  
**CATALOG**

Table Legs  
Bun Feet  
Kitchen & Bath Turnings  
Table & Vanity Base Kits  
Ready to Finish

OVER **100!** Styles!

Call for a free color catalog  
800.843.7405

www.tablelegs.com  
BOX 329, ST. JOHNSBURY, VT 05819

**CLASSIC DESIGNS**  
by **MATTHEW BURAK**

READER SERVICE NO. 165

**CUSTOM MILLED MOULDINGS**  
ANY Width • ANY Length • ANY Thickness • ANY Profile • ANY Species

Choose from red or white oak, cherry, teak, mahogany, walnut, wenge, cocobolo, gonzalo alves, heart pine or dozens of others – all milled to your specifications for interior or exterior trim, paneling, rails, flooring, stair parts and more.

Call For **FREE** Catalog!  
Call for a prompt price quote.

**M.L. CONDON COMPANY Inc.**  
248 Ferris Avenue, White Plains, NY 10603  
Phone: (914) 946-4111 • Fax: (914) 946-3779

READER SERVICE NO. 42

Operate 3-phase woodworking machines from single-phase!

**Kay Industries PHASEMASTER® Rotary Phase Converters**

- Immediate delivery
- Two year warranty
- True 3-phase output
- Whisper quiet operation
- No-charge tech support, 24-7
- Regulated output for CNC Machines
- The most capacity at the least cost, guaranteed!
- Protect your investment - Insist on **Phasemaster®**
- Visit us today at [www.kayind.com](http://www.kayind.com)

**NEW!**  
Turn-on 3-phase with wireless remote.

**General Offices**  
604 N. Hill St.  
South Bend, IN 46617  
800-348-5257  
574-289-5932 (fax)

**Western Region**  
4127 Bay St. #6  
Fremont, CA 94538  
510-656-8766  
510-657-7283 (fax)

The World Leader in Single to Three-Phase Power Conversion

READER SERVICE NO. 131

Enjoy the benefits of HVLP with a **FUJI!**

Introducing the new Q3™ and Q4™ Quiet models.  
First ever in the mid-price range.  
Noise reduced by over 50% for a more relaxed spraying environment.  
Systems also include the new Fuji Hi-Flex™ Rubber Hose.

**FUJI INDUSTRIAL SPRAY EQUIPMENT LTD.**

- High transfer efficiency
- Soft, easy to control spray
- Compact and portable

Dealer Inquiries Welcome • 800-650-0930 • Website: [www.fujispray.com](http://www.fujispray.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 103

Discover over 930 Porter-Cable items online.  
[www.amazon.com/portercable](http://www.amazon.com/portercable)

Featuring above-the-table height adjustments and bit changes, the muscle of the new 890 Router comes from a Porter-Cable built, 2-1/4 HP, soft start motor with advanced electronic feedback.

**NEW**

- Powerful 2-1/4 hp, soft start motor, 12 amps
- Variable speed 10-23,000 rpm, electronic feedback, table top height adjustment, handle switch access and spindle lock
- Premium 1/4-inch and 1/2-inch self releasing collet system for easy bit removal
- Includes plunge base with machined brass post bushings, quick motor release, thumb rotating depth stop, templet sized sub-base, removable springs, and built in dust collection

**#895PK**  
2-1/4 HP Fixed Base, Plunge Base Kit with Height Adjuster

\*We will match our competitors price plus beat it by 10% of the difference. Find out more at [www.amazon.com/price-match](http://www.amazon.com/price-match).

Call for your FREE Tool Crib catalog  
**1-800-635-5140**

**amazon.com**  
tools & hardware

READER SERVICE NO. 206

# Shop should be shop

Send for a risk-free issue of America's leading

Keeping your skills honed and sharp gives you an edge on quality and efficiency. That's why every *Fine Woodworking* article, feature, and department is written by skilled hands-on experts who share proven know-how and techniques you'll use again and again.

Send for a risk-free issue and put the power of *Fine Woodworking* in your shop. If you like it, you can subscribe and get \$20 off the newsstand price for one year. With your subscription, you'll receive our popular annual issue, *TOOLS & SHOPS*, plus subscriber-only "Shop Tips" with every issue, automatic delivery, and Taunton's 100% Money-Back Guarantee.



*Fine Woodworking*... a magazine and so much more.

Call toll free 888-304-6044 or visit [www.finewoodworking.com/ts](http://www.finewoodworking.com/ts)



The Taunton Press

# skills as sharp as tools.

woodworking magazine





## All the best of our first 156 issues, now on CD

Finally, the most complete library of authoritative woodworking information anywhere. Now on one, easy-to-use CD.

*The Best of Fine Woodworking* CD gives you immediate access to more than 600 of the most significant articles from 27 years of publication.

It includes timeless material from out-of-print issues. Even more complete than the new online archive, it also includes 2,097 invaluable tips from "Methods of Work," our most popular column, going back to its debut in 1976.

PC and MAC compatible, the CD is ready to load and ready to use. Full-text search capability locates the exact information you want – plus all related material – in just seconds.

As an added bonus, *The Best of Fine Woodworking* CD comes with a full year of free, unlimited access to our pay-per-article online version. So now you can look things up anywhere the Web is available.

Regular price: \$150.00 ***Fine Woodworking* subscriber-only price: \$125.00**



To order, call toll free 866-452-5180 and mention offer code M180007



The Taunton Press

Postage and handling extra; payable in U.S. funds.



**NOW YOU CAN ORDER ON-LINE!**

- Oxford Premium Spray Lacquers
- Oxford Hybrid Varnishes
- Oxford Polyurethanes
- Homestead Dyes
- Mirka Abrasives
- Spray Equipment
- Polishing Materials

or call 1-800-752-9922

[www.targetcoatings.com](http://www.targetcoatings.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 109



Why should I use System Three on my projects?  
**“Because Woodworking Built Our Company.”**  
 Kern Hendricks -  
 Chemical Engineer & Founder

**We Understand Specific Woodworking Applications.**

For over 2 decades we've been working with woodworkers to formulate the highest quality epoxy adhesives and coatings for their specific applications. We specifically designed MirrorCoat to create a high gloss, decorative coating on wood and other materials.

**Pourable Perfection.**

MirrorCoat is specially formulated to create glossy, high build resin surfaces on bars, counters and tabletops. Pour a perfect durable, smooth, glossy finish on many surfaces such as wood, ceramics, plaster and masonry.



**SYSTEM THREE**  
 EPOXY Part A  
 HARDENER Part B

Get a FREE CD-ROM for \$5.00 off your purchase at [SYSTEMTHREE.COM](http://SYSTEMTHREE.COM) visit our new website!

**SYSTEM THREE**  
 Find a dealer near you: 1.800.333.5514

Pourable, self-leveling, bartop coating. Scratch & stain resistant as well as alcohol & water proof.

READER SERVICE NO. 226

**HEARNE HARDWOODS, INC.**  
 Specializing in  
**Pennsylvania Cherry**

Plain & Figured Cherry from 4/4 to 16/4  
 Also: Premium Walnut, Figured Maple, wide planks & a large variety of exceptionally fine domestic & imported woods including free form slabs, turning blanks, burls, & instrument lumber.

*National & International Shipping*

200 Whiteside Dr., Oxford, PA 19363  
 ph 610-932-7400 fax 610-932-3130  
[www.hearnehardwoods.com](http://www.hearnehardwoods.com)  
**Toll Free 1-888-814-0007**

READER SERVICE NO. 40



**The Burgess Edge**  
 Pat. # 5,996,639

The Burgess Edge is a patented, matched pair of router bits that enables the user to edgeband plywood in a unique process. The final product resembles a joined board in appearance and durability.

**Now available as a shaper bit.**

Box 32, Route 125 • Ripton, VT 05766  
 Phone: 802-233-1489 • E-mail: [bmichael@sover.net](mailto:bmichael@sover.net)  
[www.burgessedge.com](http://www.burgessedge.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 65

**FREE TOOL CATALOG!**

**Your Best Work Starts With Us...**

With over 8,000 of the finest woodworking tools in the world, Woodcraft can help you work more efficiently and skillfully than ever. Call for your Free copy today.

**1-800-542-9115**  
**WOODCRAFT®**  
[www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)  
 560 Airport Ind. Park, Dept. 03TS12T,  
 PO Box 1686, Parkersburg, WV 26102-1686

READER SERVICE NO. 118

**ROUTER & TABLE SAW SYSTEMS**

- **Combination Router & Table Saw Fences**  
 Micro Adjustable, Accurate to 1/1000 of an inch
- **Router Tables, Table Saw Extension and Floating Infeed/Outfeed Tables**  
 Available in Solid Phenolic or Melamine
- **Complete Table Saw Upgrade Systems**  
 Available for virtually all Cabinet & Contractor Saws
- **True Zero Clearance Miter/Cutoff Sled**  
 Micro-Adjustable, Positive Detents Every 1/2 Degree
- **Table Mounted Router Lift System**  
 Raise & Lower a Router with 1/1000 of an inch precision
- **And Much More...**



Router Table Systems Available  
 Jointech Routing Center

**BEST NEW TOOL**  
 AWARD  
 2004

**SMART MITER™**  
 Voted Best New Tool by Popular Woodworking!

**FREE CATALOG!**  
**CALL TODAY!**  
**1-800-619-1288**  
[www.jointech.com](http://www.jointech.com)

**JOINTECH**  
 ULTRA PRECISION WOODWORKING SYSTEMS

Authorized Dealer For  
**GENERAL INTERNATIONAL**

READER SERVICE NO. 34

**GET A LIFE**  
 With Quality Router Accessories



**ROUSSEAU CO.**  
**FREE CATALOG 800-635-3416 • [www.rousseauco.com](http://www.rousseauco.com)**

READER SERVICE NO. 45

**www.woodfinishing.org**

People travel from across the United States to take Dakota County Technical College's unique nine-month Wood Finishing and Restoration program. Get hands-on training from industry professionals!

- Furniture Restoration •
- Furniture Service Technician •
- Production Finishing •



**DAKOTA COUNTY TECHNICAL COLLEGE**  
 Rosemount, Minnesota

For more info, Call 1-877-937-3282 ext. 362 Visit the Web [www.woodfinishing.org](http://www.woodfinishing.org)

READER SERVICE NO. 173

# Q&A

## The scoop on Japanese chisels

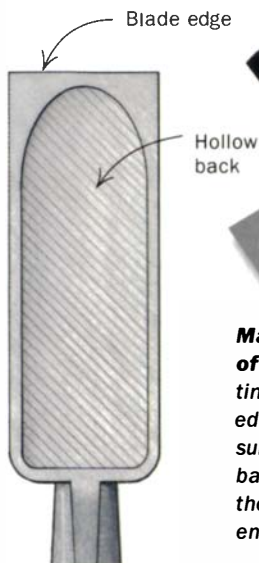
*What is the long-term effect of sharpening Japanese chisels? Won't the scooped-out back eventually give you a curved cutting tip as you grind the edge away? What purpose does the scooped-out back have? How does this allow you to get and hold a sharper cutting edge?*

—Ben Pearce, Melbourne, Australia

**Harrelson Stanley replies:** Japanese chisels are made from two separate metals. The bulk of the tool is forged from soft iron. The back, which comprises the cutting edge, is made from a plate of very hard steel that is forge-welded to the soft iron. The soft iron of the chisel supports the steel in a way that is related to the thinking behind wrapping a piece of graphite in softwood to make a pencil. As you sharpen the bevel (top) of the chisel, the soft iron falls away at a much faster rate than the lower edge of the blade,

## JAPANESE CHISELS EXPLAINED

With each sharpening, the back must be flattened to prevent the hollow from creeping forward and opening the forward edge of the blade.



made from the much harder steel plate.

Because the cutting region of the blade is made solely from hard steel, it would take an inordinate amount of time to flatten the back of the chisel if it were solid, compared to the time it takes to sharpen the bevel edge. So the volume of hard steel in the back of the chisel is hollowed out. If your stone is flat, the hollow makes it easy to flatten the bottom of the chisel to a very high standard—as much as plus or minus 2 microns—because of this design.

[Harrelson Stanley teaches Japanese building methods in Massachusetts.]

**Maintain the shape of the hollow.** Each time you hone the edge of the chisel, be sure to flatten the back. This will retain the hollow for the entire life of the chisel.

## Problems with milk paint

*Inspired by the cupboards that Mike Dunbar made a couple of years ago (FWW #151, pp. 64-71), I decided to make something similar and, as he did on one of his cupboards, I used milk paint for my finish. This was my first time using milk paint, so, like Mike, I finished the painted surface with linseed oil, which is supposed to even out the color. But my finish turned out blotchy. What did I do wrong?*

—Rich Tassoni, Faraday, La.

**Mike Dunbar replies:** The milk paint may have been applied improperly, which is a common mistake among first-time users. Milk paint cannot be flowed onto a surface like oil or latex finishes. Being water based, milk paint is sucked into the wood, so it must be applied thinly and worked heavily with the brush. Efforts to flow on the paint will result in a blotchy surface. The paint also will build up, and look crusty. The oil topcoat will not make the paint blotchy; it will only accentuate what already exists. By the way, I no longer use boiled linseed oil. I now use untinted Danish oil.

Milk paint does not result in a flat, uniform color. While one of its features is slight differences in shading, this is so subtle that one would not describe it as being blotchy.

For more information on milk paint and painting processes using milk paint, go to [www.milkpaint.com](http://www.milkpaint.com).

[Mike Dunbar is a contributing editor.]



**Milk paint can't be flowed on.** Milk paint, unlike oil- or latex-based paints, must be applied in thin, well-worked coats. Some colors, like soldier blue (shown), can require up to three coats.



**Whiteside Machine Co.  
Industrial Router bits  
Made In USA**

This is the router bit  
That was **RATED #1**  
In both quality of cut  
And in tool life through  
Actual testing of  
17 router bit brands  
By Fine Woodworking.

Whiteside Machine Co.  
4506 Shook Rd.  
Claremont, NC 28610

Family owned and operated since 1970

Free Catalog 1-800-225-3982  
Or visit us on-line at  
[www.whitesiderouterbits.com](http://www.whitesiderouterbits.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 181



THE LEADER IN DIAMOND SHARPENING  
Diamond Machining Technology, Inc.  
[www.dmtsharp.com](http://www.dmtsharp.com)

800.666.4DMT

*"To protect my investment in quality tools,  
I rely on the quality performance of  
DMT® Diamond Machining Technology  
Sharpeners – all American made. DMT  
maintains the precision cutting edges of  
my chisels, planes, and knives."*

**The first rule of shop maintenance is  
Sharpen your tools**



SCOTT  
PHILLIPS  
SIGNATURE  
SERIES

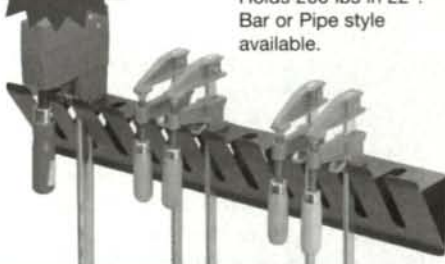
Master Woodworker,  
Educator and Host of  
*American Woodshop*

READER SERVICE NO. 75

**NEW Steel Clamp Racks**

SALE only  
**\$19.95**  
2+/\$18.50 ea.

**Save Space!**  
Holds 200 lbs in 22".  
Bar or Pipe style  
available.



Order on-line [www.woodpeck.com](http://www.woodpeck.com)

**THE SOURCE FOR BANDSAW ACCESSORIES**

**Iturra Design : New 2004 Catalog**

Free Catalog

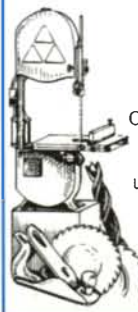


- Introducing the **Quick Release** by Carter Products
- Our new **Blade Gage** bandsaw blade tension meter.
- **Lenox Pro Master** carbide-tipped and Bimetal blades
- **Bandrollers**, rip and re-saw fences, improved tension springs, tires, table inserts, circle jigs, and much more.
- History and comparison between **Delta** and **JET** bandsaws.  
**CALL 1-888-722-7078 or 1-904-642-2802**

READER SERVICE NO. 7

**FREE TOOL CATALOG**

Visit us on the internet at  
[highlandhardware.com](http://highlandhardware.com)



Our comprehensive tool catalog gives you  
more than just manufacturer's specs.  
We provide detailed tool descriptions,  
useful tips & techniques and a schedule  
of seminars & hands-on workshops.

CALL FOR FREE TOOL CATALOG  
**1-888-500-4466**

READER SERVICE NO. 16

**TRADITIONAL WOODWORKER**

Purveyor of Fine Tools  
for Discerning Craftsmen

[www.traditionalwoodworker.com](http://www.traditionalwoodworker.com)

Clifton • E.C.E. • Two Cherries • Henry Taylor • Pax  
Free Shipping and Gift Offer - See Site for Details

**How to flatten wavy veneer**

*I am in the process of veneering some drawer fronts with mahogany crotch veneer. I plan to book-match consecutive pieces, but my veneer is not flat enough to work. How do I flatten veneer without cracking it?*

—Tom Calisto, Durham, N.C.



**Veneer bath**

- 1 part flour
- 2 parts plastic resin glue (Weldwood)
- 3 parts water
- 1½ parts glycerin
- 1 part isopropyl alcohol



To avoid lumps, mix the wet and dry ingredients in separate containers. Then, slowly pour the dry ingredients into the wet mixture. Stir rigorously until the consistency is smooth.

**Recipe for success.** These ingredients make a bath that binds weak fibers in veneer, making the veneer more flexible.

**Karen Wales replies:** To flatten veneer, I use a recipe for a veneer bath (above right) that I learned from my instructors at North Bennet Street School and in an article by Tage Frid in *FWW* #42 (pp. 74-75).

For the drying process, you'll need two pieces of plywood, a stack of newspapers, and anything you have that can weight it down. All ingredients can be found at most hardware, pharmacy, and grocery stores.

Before beginning the flattening process, it is important to select and number each veneer sheet. Keeping the sheets in order is a key to having them look nice on a finished piece of furniture.

Once the veneer bath is of a smooth consistency, immerse all of the sheets, one by one, in the mixture. Then leave them all to soak (together) for around 30 minutes.

Next, lay a generous amount of newspaper on a flat piece of plywood. Begin to layer the veneer sheets with three or four pieces of newspaper between each sheet. Once the stack is complete, lay a few more sheets of newspaper on top of the pile, a piece of plywood on top of that, and then the weight. Let it dry for an hour or so.

Finally, pull off the wet newspapers, replace them with dry ones, cover, and weight the stack once again. Leave the veneer to dry overnight before using it. [Karen Wales is an assistant editor.]



**Number veneers before processing.** Veneers usually arrive in the order in which they were sliced from the log. To keep track of the sequence, number each sheet before soaking it. Then immerse each one in the bath, making sure that each veneer gets covered with the mixture. Leave all the veneers soaking together for about 30 minutes.



**Let the veneer drip and dry.** Allow the excess mixture to drip from each veneer. Then layer several sheets of newspaper between each one, to soak up excess fluid. After an hour, replace the wet paper with dry paper.



**Flatten the treated veneers.** Place the stack of veneer between two sheets of plywood. Add the weight (about 10 lb.) and leave the stack to dry overnight.



**Dovetail Marker**

(Stainless Steel)  
\$14



Introducing  
**Gladstone TOOLS™**  
"The Tools You Keep"

**Graduated Engineers**

**4 piece Precision Thickness Plates**

1/8", 1/4", 3/8",  
1/2" 1"x2" overall  
size, Stainless Steel  
\$24



**Squares**  
5pcs Set:  
2", 3", 6", 9"  
and 12"  
\$75 in  
wooden  
box

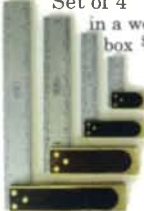


**Trammel Points**  
\$14.95



**Rosewood Trysquares**

Set of 4  
in a wooden  
box \$75.00

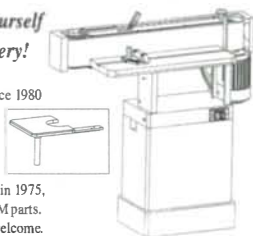


Order on the web: [www.gladstonetools.com](http://www.gladstonetools.com)  
[www.mannyswoodworkersplace.com](http://www.mannyswoodworkersplace.com)  
or by phone 1-800-243-0713  
555 S. Broadway, Lexington, Ky 40508

READER SERVICE NO. 176

MAO SHAN is now online. Come visit our website and see all of our Do-It-Yourself Woodworking Machinery!

- Competitive prices!
- Professional manufacturer since 1980 of woodworking machinery.
- ISO 9001 Certified!
- Dealer and Distributors' inquiries only please.
- Cast iron foundry established in 1975, casting and machining of OEM parts.
- OEM & ODM inquiries are welcome.



<http://www.maoshan.com>

E-mail: [maoshan@ms15.hinet.net](mailto:maoshan@ms15.hinet.net)  
Fax: 886-4-22792667

READER SERVICE NO. 222

**Australian School of Fine Furniture**

AUSTRALIA'S MOST COMPREHENSIVE 2 YEAR DIPLOMA COURSE IN DESIGNING AND MAKING FINE FURNITURE OFFERED IN THE FORESTED ISLAND STATE OF TASMANIA. NEXT INTAKE JANUARY 2004.

FULLY ACCREDITED INCLUDING PROFESSIONAL TRAINING IN DESIGN, MAKING AND BUSINESS MANAGEMENT. FOR INFORMATION: EMAIL: [INFO@ASFF.COM.AU](mailto:INFO@ASFF.COM.AU) WEB: [WWW.ASFF.COM.AU](http://WWW.ASFF.COM.AU) PH: +61-3-6331 0288



READER SERVICE NO. 59

**Operate 3-Phase Shop Motors from Single Phase Power**

Different Models To Fit Your Needs



**The ROKN ROTO-CON™**  
Rotary Phase Converter will provide 3-phase power from single-phase sources to operate single or multiple motor applications found in woodworking shops. **The ROKN Phase-Shifter** is a medium-duty static-type converter for shop applications such as drill presses, mills, saws, etc., where continuous full load use is not required, but low initial cost is important.

**ROKNELECTRICAL** 1-800-221-ROKNEXT. 219  
ELECTRICAL INDUSTRIES, INC. [www.ronkelectrical.com](http://www.ronkelectrical.com)  
P.O. Box 160, Dept. 219 • Niles, IL 62075 • Ph: 217/563-8333 Ext. 219 • Fax: 217/563-8336

READER SERVICE NO. 224

**LAUNSTEIN HARDWOODS**

Manufacturer & Distributor of 3/8" SOLID HARDWOOD FLOORING  
Pre-sanded and ready to finish. Available in RED OAK, WHITE OAK, ASH, HICKORY, HARD MAPLE, CHERRY, WALNUT  
Choice of 4 widths and 3 grades  
Unlimited choice of mouldings  
Most orders shipped within 24 hrs

**LAUNSTEIN HARDWOODS**  
384 S. Every Road,  
Mason, Michigan 48854  
PHONE 517-676-1133 FAX 517-676-6379  
[www.launstein.com](http://www.launstein.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 119

**Mortise and Tenon Joints with your Hand drill!**



**Kits \$30 - \$46**

For a dealer near you, visit [www.beadlock.com](http://www.beadlock.com) or call 920-485-0350

**beadLOCK®**  
Loose Tenon Joinery System  
Journeyman Tool Company, LLC • Horicon, WI

Made in the USA • US PATENTS 5,807,033 AND 6,116,826

READER SERVICE NO. 114

**Do It Yourself!**

Systems for Every Size Shop!

New! Powder Paint Finish!

Complete Dust Collection System and Ductwork Package shipped direct to your shop!  
Easy Installation Instructions!

2-Year Warranty

Design Service  
Detailed Ductwork Diagram makes assembly a snap!

Filter Media is Test Rated  
Captures 99.9% of 0.2 - 2.0 microns of test material @ 11 FPM face velocity.

True Cyclone Technology

Collect dust at the source!  
Don't breathe it!

FREE Catalog!



In Stock Ductwork!  
FREE Shipping on Ductwork\*!

\*48 States - \$50 Min. - Some Restrictions Apply

Source Code FWWTS



Order Online! [www.oneida-air.com](http://www.oneida-air.com)  
Call Us Today!

**1.800.732.4065**

READER SERVICE NO. 207

# Have you seen .....

## our website lately?

### finewoodworking.com



The Taunton Press  
Inspiration for hands-on living®

## Quick and to the Point.



Delmhorst – the most trusted name in moisture meters – introduces **Accuscan**™ a pinless moisture meter for all your woodworking needs.

- ▶ Measure incoming stock to ensure quality from a supplier.
- ▶ Check moisture in finished products quickly and without penetrating the surface.
- ▶ Minimize defects such as splits and cracks.

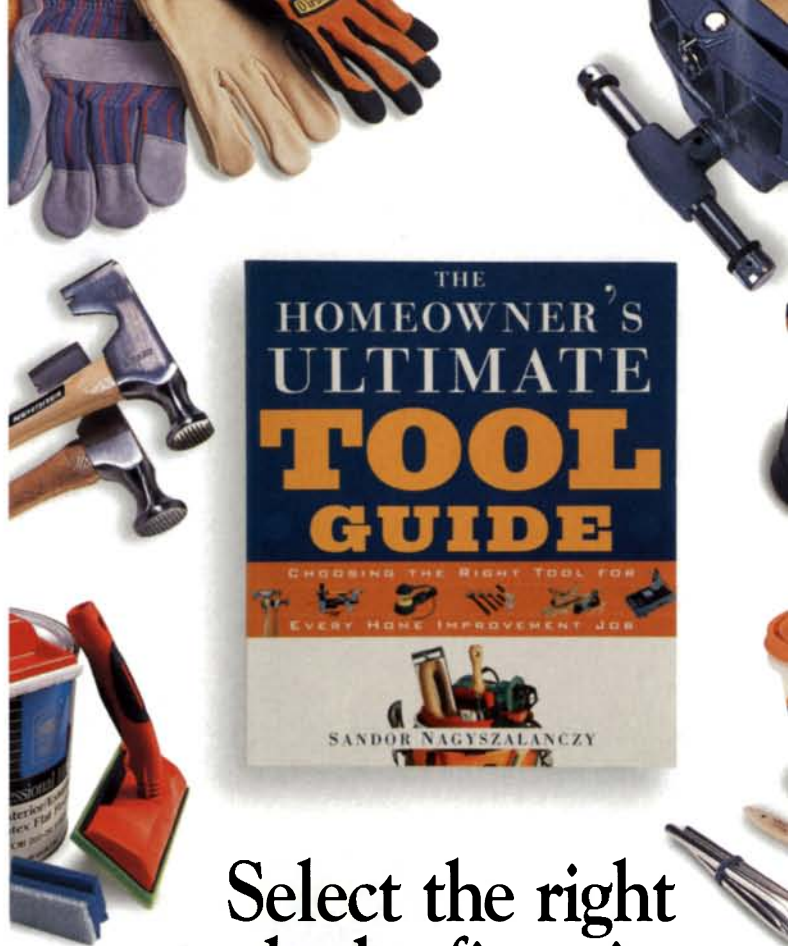
Use **Accuscan** with our proven **J-Series** pin-type meters and you have the best of both worlds – the pin-point accuracy to check core moisture levels and the quick scanning ability of a pinless meter. No other two instruments give you the fast results and accurate readings woodworkers demand.

**DELMHORST**  
INSTRUMENT CO.

WHEN ACCURACY IS THE POINT.  
1-800-222-0638 www.delmhorst.com

READER SERVICE NO. 22

© 2011 Delmhorst Instrument Co.



## Select the right tools the first time.

Inside you'll  
find complete  
tool kits for:

- home repair
- painting
- drywall
- plumbing
- tiling
- flooring
- carpentry
- mechanical
- electrical
- auto
- roofing
- sharpening
- demolition
- and more

No more trips to the hardware store in the middle of a job! Now you'll know precisely what tools you need to get great results when tackling home projects or making repairs.

*The Homeowner's Ultimate Tool Guide* prepares you in advance by listing the tools required, how to use them properly, and how to maintain them.

Call toll free 800-888-8286  
or visit us at: [www.taunton.com/ultimate](http://www.taunton.com/ultimate)

Only \$19.95 mention offer MW/80003 Product #070696



The Taunton Press



**ARIZONA MESQUITE SPECIALIST**  
**www.lumberlady.com**  
 toll free (877) 919 - 9422  
 free picture catalog  
**ebony snakewood**

**Quick Angle**  
 Angle/Pitch Finder  
 \$29.99 plus shipping & tax  
**www.quickangle.biz**  
 order toll free 866-244-8472

**Pssst! Need wood?**  
**woodfinder**  
 It's FAST, EASY and FREE!  
 Browse our WOOD LIBRARY!  
**Over 400 quality suppliers!**  
**www.woodfinder.com**  
 SUPPLIERS: Join us today! Call 1-877-933-4637 for details.

**The Fine & Creative Woodworking Program at ROCKINGHAM COMMUNITY COLLEGE**  
 is an internationally recognized associate degree & certificate program. Instruction in hand-tools, furniture, construction, shop start-up, operation & much more.  
 PO Box 38, Wentworth, NC 27375-0038  
 Phone: (336) 342-4261, ext. 2178.  
**www.rcc.cc.nc.us/woodwork/homepage.html**  
 AAEEOC

**Trend Airshield**  
 Includes Battery Charger  
**Airware America**  
 Box 20219, 240<sup>th</sup> St., Elbow Lake, MN 56531  
 3M Authorized Distributor  
 e-mail: airware@runestone.net  
**www.airwareamerica.com**  
 Free Info **1-800-328-1792**  
 Ideal for wood dust

**The PECK TOOL** since 1929  
 company  
 For a catalog please send \$2.00 (US) to:  
 525 E Duarte Rd  
 Monrovia, CA 91016  
 Fine Quality Hand Woodworking Tools  
**www.PeckTool.com**

**If You're Shopping for a TORMEK**  
**Call Us First!**  
 •All Accessories in Stock  
 •5 Year Extended Warranty  
 •Technical Assistance  
**SHARP TOOLS USA**  
 1106 VALLEY RIDGE DRIVE  
 GRAIN VALLEY, MD 21029 **800-872-5489**  
 SharpToolsUSA@att.net **www.SharpToolsUSA.com**

**BEAR MOUNTAIN BOATS**  
*We wrote the books on building the world's most beautiful canoes & kayaks.*  
 books • plans • instruction • inspiration  
**1.877.392.8880 www.bearmountainboats.com**

**CROWN PLANE COMPANY**  
 TRADITIONAL BENCH MADE PLANES  
 JACK...SMOOTH...SCRUB...SCRAPERS...BLOCK  
 CHAIRMAKERS TRAVISHERS...COMPASS PLANES  
 18 Chase Street South Portland, ME 04106  
 (207) 799-7535  
 Order Online **www.crownplane.com**

As seen in FWW issue #160 Tools & Shops pg 91  
 Dealer inquiries also welcomed  
**CALVO BRASS MALLET**  
 Calvo Studio 186 East Main St. Gloucester, MA 01930  
**www.calvostudio.com** Order Info. 978-283-0231

**BELCHER Veneer Company**  
 • All Species  
 • All Backers  
 • All Sizes  
**FREE SAMPLES**  
**Toll Free 866.6 VENEER**  
 866.683.6337  
**www.belcherveneer.com**

**Sauers & Company**  
 Processed Veneers  
 Exotic & Domestic Wood Veneer  
 Full Sheets or Cut to Size  
 Small quantities welcome!  
 1102 Dorris Avenue  
 High Point, NC 27260  
**www.sveneers.com** Phone: 336.886.4716

**- Bargain Books -**  
**Books**  
**America's biggest catalog selection!**  
 • Save up to 80% on current books, recent overstocks, imports, reprints.  
 • Woodworking and Workshop Skills, Arts & Crafts, Do-It-Yourself, Sports, Biography, History, Travel-over 60 subjects.  
**Free Catalog: 1-800-677-3483**  
 Edward R. Hamilton, Bookseller  
 385 Oak, Falls Village CT 06031-5005  
**www.erhbooks.com/fbt**

**ORIGINALFURNITUREPLANS.COM**  


**Cerritos College**  
**Department of Woodworking Manufacturing Technology**  
 One of the most comprehensive wood-working educational programs in the country. In our 30,000 square foot facility, we offer courses from "Woodworking with Handtools" to "CNC Automated Manufacturing for Woodworking" and everything in between.  
**Classes are available 7 days a week from 7AM to 10 PM. 562-860-2451 x2986**  
**www.cerritos.edu/wood**

**Curly Woods**  
 Specializing in North American Figured Woods, Exotic Woods and Turning Woods.  
**www.curlywoods.com**  
 Toll-free: (866) Mr. Woods (866.679.6637)

**Turned Stone**  
  
**STONeturners.com**

**CLASSIC PLANES**  
 Dovetailed hand-made Norris style planes - sensible prices  
 "I have a number of antique and modern Norris planes but the craftsmanship of yours surpasses them all!"  
 —Mr. R Stewart, Ft. Worth, Texas  
**www.classicplanes.com**  
 159 Oving Rd, Chichester, West Sussex, PO20 2AG, UK

**SCHOOL OF WOODWORKING**  
 DISCOVER the ART of HAND TOOL WOODWORKING  
 1-12 day Courses to Advanced Levels  
 Catalogue of Courses • (254) 799-1480  
 In Central Texas **www.cfeschool.com**

**GOOD HOPE HARDWOODS, Inc.**  
 "Where Fine Woodworking Begins"  
 4/4-24/4 Custom Cut Wide Matched Sets  
 Custom Flooring Available  
 Specializing In:  
 Figured & Plain Cherry, Walnut & Claro Walnut,  
 Tiger Maple & 58" Wide Bubinga  
 Plus Many Other Species  
 1627 New London Rd., Landenberg PA 19350  
**Phone 610-274-8842/Fax 610-255-3677**  
**www.goodhope.com**  
 We Provide Personalized Service

**The Cutting Edge, Inc.**  
**Fine Hand Tools For Turners  
 Carvers & All Woodworkers**

Hollow Turning  
 Henry Taylor Carving &  
 Power Carving  
 Turning Tools

AutoMach  
 Planes & Handtools

www.cuttingedgetools.com  
 7123 SouthWest Fwy Houston TX 77074  
 713/ 981-9228

**MISUGI DESIGNS**

Japanese Tansu & Cabinet Hardware  
 Japanese Woodworking Tools  
 Japanese Paper

Visit us at:  
**www.misugidesigns.com**  
 Tel: 707-422-0734 / Fax: 707-425-2465

**A Woodworker's Dream**

Learn to build Shaker-inspired furniture with our finest craftsmen. One-on-one or group instruction available with classes to fit your schedule from one day to multi-week lengths.

**DANA ROBES WOOD CRAFTSMEN**  
 Lower Shaker Village, P.O. Box 707, Enfield, NH 03748  
 800 722-5036 • Fax: 603 632-5377 • www.danarobes.com

**CUSTOM ROUTER BITS, CUTTERS & KNIVES**  
*2 week or less delivery*

**LIBERTY LINE**  
 WHEN IT COMES TO ROUTER BITS  
 WE KNOW WHAT WE'RE TALKING ABOUT.

**RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.**  
 "Industry Leader In Custom Router Bits"

FAX us your custom drawings toll free at  
 1-888-RCT-TOOL (728-8665) or  
 mail drawings or wood samples

**RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.**  
 595 New York Ave., PO Box 497, Lyndhurst, NJ 07071  
 Send \$3 for complete 100 page Stock Tool Catalog  
 or see us at www.ridgecarbide.com  
 800-443-0992 rcttool@bellatlantic.net

**SANDMAN Products**  
*Affordable Downdraft Sanding Stations*

Phone: 800-265-2008 • Fax: 574-259-5758  
 www.sandmanproducts.com • info@sandmanproducts.com

**WOOD RIVER VENEER**

Architectural  
 & Cut to Size Panels,  
 Faces, 2 Plys & Veneer

800-875-7084  
 www.woodriverveneer.com

www.toolsforworkingwood.com  
 Hand tools for the serious woodworker

Complete catalogue on-line  
 27 W 20 St. #507, New York City  
 800-426-4813

**TWC**

**The Woodworker's Choice**

SAVE \$ - check the TWC web site for numerous BIG BARGAIN overstock & close-out items such as: saw blades, router bits, shaper cutters, clamps, etc. You'll also find more BIG \$ SAVINGS on the WEEKLY SPECIAL ITEMS we select from regular TWC catalogs.

www.thewoodworkerschoice.com  
**CALL TOLL FREE: 1-800-892-4866**

**Think of the possibilities!**

10" Mallet Gouge  
 Set-6pc • \$178.95

Toss the hobby tools ...we're 100% guaranteed!  
**FREE Catalog!**  
 Po Box 611 • Faribault, MN 55021  
 stubaidirect.com • 1-888-901-8099 • Dealers Wanted!

**Shop Jigs**  
**Step-by-Step Plans**  
 with Hardware

**WoodsmithStore.com**

*Let Reader Service work for you.*  
 Receive information direct from your choice of advertisers by using the Reader Service form located next to the inside back cover.

**THE PERFECT MITER**

Made in the U.S.A.

Everyone who owns one raves about the Lion Miter Trimmer

To learn more, visit:  
 www.lionmitertrimmer.com  
**POOTATUCK**  
 Corporation, Lynn, MA 01905  
 (781) 588-9699

**BRING THE  
 OUTDOORS, INDOORS**

MANUFACTURERS OF QUALITY  
 CABINET DOORS AND DRAWER FRONTS  
 SINCE 1980 • CUSTOMIZED TO FIT YOUR  
 CUSTOMER'S LIFESTYLE

PHONE: 1-800-273-8600  
 FAX: 1-800-565-5019

**MASS BAY WOOD PRODUCTS, INC.**  
 131 Fisher Street P.O.Box 497 • Franklin, MA 02038

*Fine Architectural Millwork & Joinery*

**H**

**HARRIS**  
 Woodworking  
*Certified Member AWI*

*Domestic & Exotic Hardwood Lumber & Plywoods  
 Custom Milling*

Toll Free 1-888-288-4611 | www.harriswoodworking.com

**Classic European Woodcarving**

Single and group instruction available  
 With Master Woodcarver - Videos - Tools - Patterns - Supplies - Everything

**Nora Hall**  
 www.norahall.com • Toll Free 1-866-392-3416 • nora@norahall.com

**The only shop mallet you will ever need!**

**Halder Simplex Mallet System**

Over 60 years of German quality now available in the U.S.  
**Free Catalog**

- Tailor hammer to your needs
- 9 hammer sizes
- 7 insert grades
- Interchangeable housings

www.halder-usa.com  
 262-521-2050

MAKE A WINDSOR CHAIR  
with Michael Dunbar



Learn with the Master.  
Craftsman - Teacher - Author  
— 31 Years —

Week-long Workshops Held Year-round  
44 Timber Swamp Road  
Hampton, NH 03842  
603-929-9801  
thewindsorinstitute.com

## THE ST. JAMES BAY TOOL Co.

Norris Style Planes  
Finished or Castings  
Antique Tools  
Bought & Sold  
Free Catalog  
800-574-2589  
www.stjamesbaytoolco.com



122 E. Main St.  
Mesa, AZ 85201  
480-835-1477



Featuring gold-tooled  
replacement leather for  
desk and table tops and  
custom cut table pads.

410-243-8300

www.dovetailrestoration.com

## An Education in Craftsmanship

For careers in:

- CARPENTRY
- PRESERVATION CARPENTRY
- CABINET & FURNITURE MAKING
- PIANO TECHNOLOGY
- VIOLIN MAKING & RESTORATION

Financial aid for qualified students. Accredited member  
ACCSET. Short workshops are also offered.

## NORTH BENNET STREET SCHOOL

39 North Bennet Street • Boston, MA 02113  
(617) 227-0155 • www.nbss.org

## DOVETAILED DRAWERS

Reasonably priced method to distinguish your cabinets.



- Custom-sized width and depth
- 1/2" solid maple, assembled and sanded
- 2-coat catalyzed finish available
- Quick service, shipped UPS

## EAGLE WOODWORKING

1130 East Street, Tewksbury, MA 01876-1459  
FAX (978) 640-1501 (800) 628-4849

## Oregon Black Walnut

**GOBY WALNUT PRODUCTS**  
Wide lumber - 4/4 through 16/4  
Turning - Carving Stock  
Gunstocks - Veneer  
Instrument Grade Lumber  
No Minimum Order  
Viewing by Appointment Only  
(541) 926-1079  
Web Site: www.gobywalnut.com

**WOODJOY® TOOLS**  
Fine Tools to Enhance  
Your Skill & Ability  
P.O. Box 204, Swansea, MA 02777  
508-669-5245  
woodjoytools.com

## BEVEL BOSS

"When the angle isn't 90° I reach for the Bevel Boss. It's a simple tool that lets me set my T-bevel accurately to within 1/4". The Bevel Boss is the ultimate angle authority in my shop."

Chris Becksvoort, Contributing Editor to Fine Woodworking



3" End Scale • 12" Rule, 1/16" Grads On Back • Easy To Read & Use

877-472-7717 • www.sutherlandtool.com

## Astragal Press

Books on early tools, trades  
and technology  
www.astragalpress.com  
Free Catalog 866-543-3045

## Specialtytools.com

Your one stop source for tools  
Woodworking, Plastic Laminate, Solid Surface  
www.specialtytools.com

1.800.669.5519 FAX: 1.800.660.7371

## www.customforgedhardware.com

Builders Hardware  
Architectural Hardware  
Cast Brass & Bronze  
Custom Hinges & Thumbblatches

KAYNE & SON  
Custom Hardware, Inc  
Dept FW  
100 Daniel Ridge Rd  
Candler NC 28715  
828 667-8868 or 665-1988  
fax 828 665-8303

Catalogs \$5.00

## Craftsman Workshops

Summer 2004 Workshops in Oregon  
with Gary Rogowski, Chris Becksvoort,  
Teri Masaschi, Craig Vandall Stevens  
and Brian Boggs

503.284.1644

www.northwestwoodworking.com



"Selling the world's finest veneers  
isn't our job, it's our pleasure."

## berkshire veneer

29 LOCUST HILL ROAD | GT. BARRINGTON, MA 01230  
TOLL FREE: 1 (877) 836-3379 | FAX: (413) 644-9414  
EMAIL: info@berkshireveneer.com WEB: www.berkshireveneer.com

## OLD GROWTH

Tight Grained • Highly Figured  
Wide Quartersawn White Oak  
• English Brown Oak • French Oak • Curly  
English Sycamore • American Sycamore

CUSTOM ORDERS SAWN FROM OUR LOGS  
ORDERS CUSTOM PULLED  
ALL MAJOR CREDIT  
CARDS EXCEPTED

World Class Figured &  
Bookmatched Lumber  
610-775-0400  
www.talaricohardwoods.com  
22 Hardwood Lane  
Mohnton, PA 19540

## TECH-WOOD, INC.

Domestic & Imported Hardwoods

Holly, Blackwood, Mesquite, Koa  
+ 60 other species, 4/4-16/4  
Burls, Slabs, Thin Lumber  
717-933-8989

WOOD CLOCK HOBBYIST  
CATALOGUE

COLONIAL TIMES  
REPLICAS

- America's finest Clock Kits
- Everything from Plans, Parts,  
Movements & Dials to Fully  
Assembled Clocks.

To receive our catalog, call 519-884-2511,  
or sign up at www.colonialtimes.com

## WIN A GRIZZLY TABLE SAW IN OUR CRAFTSMAN CONTEST

The plans for this queen  
sized bed are CAD  
generated with pages of  
instructions. Nightstand  
included as a bonus.



#236

AMERICAN FURNITURE DESIGN  
P.O. BOX 300100 ESCONDIDO, CA 92030  
BED PLAN \$21.95 +\$3.50 S&H  
CATALOG \$3.00  
760-743-6923

www.americanfurnituredesign.com

## CUSTOM BRANDING IRONS

HIGH QUALITY, DEEP ENGRAVED BRONZE DIES  
LONG LASTING - INDUSTRIAL DUTY HEATERS  
NOT THE CHEAPEST - QUALITY COSTS MORE  
FREE BROCHURE AND SAMPLE BRANDS

ENGRAVING ARTS 800-422-4509 fax: 707-984-8045  
P.O. Box 787 www.brandingirons.net  
Laytonville, CA 95454 e-mail: clem@brandingirons.net

## BAUHAUS APPRENTICESHIP INSTITUTE

Apprenticeship: Art-Furniture Construction/Design,  
one year-fulltime, hands-on, professional, no tuition / no salary.  
1757 North Kimball Ave., Chicago, IL 60647, (773) 235-7951  
www.LF.org/bhai2000

MICRO-MESH AND ACHIEVE HIGH GLOSS  
FINISHES WITHOUT BUFFING

PERFECT FOR  
WATERBASE  
FINISHES

Contact us for  
samples.  
Available in  
sheets, rolls,  
and discs.

www.micro-surface.com  
800-225-3006 or 563-732-3240

**When Only The  
Finest Veneer  
Will Do...**



**Certainly Wood**

Phone: 716-655-0206 Fax: 716-655-3446  
www.certainlywood.com

**TWO CHERRIES**

Huge selection of hand forged woodcarving and bench chisels



Robert Larson Co.  
San Francisco

800-356-2195  
www.rlarson.com

Since 1858

**Need a precise and affordable tool for routing furniture joints?**



Visit us...  
we are the WoodRat® specialists!

[www.chipsfly.com](http://www.chipsfly.com)

**Andrews Toolworks**

Custom Router Bits & Shaper Cutters for Restorations & Reproductions

[www.routerbitsonline.com](http://www.routerbitsonline.com) • 800.821.8378  
esales@andrewstoolworks.com

**Fine European Hand Tools**



[www.diefenbacher.com](http://www.diefenbacher.com)

Diefenbacher Tools • 12132 Old Big Bend • St. Louis, MO 63122  
Free Hand Tool Catalog • 800-326-5316

**Fine Wood Kayak Plans**

*Catalog 33: Guillemot Kayaks*  
Suite # 224 Thompson St. Glastonbury, CT. 06033  
Ph: 860-639-8847 • [www.KayakPlans.com/f](http://www.KayakPlans.com/f)



**CATALOG for WOODTURNERS!**

Call Toll Free...  
(800)-683-8876

Fax... (828) 859-5551  
E-Mail... [packard@alltel.net](mailto:packard@alltel.net)

Packard Woodworks - PO Box 718 - Tryon - NC 28782



**WINDSOR CHAIR WORKSHOPS**

in historic Oley Valley, Pennsylvania  
Free camping/trout fishing on site

Jim Rendi, Tel: 610-689-4717  
[www.philadelphia-windsor-chair-shop.com](http://www.philadelphia-windsor-chair-shop.com)  
pphilawindsor@aol.com



**DUST BOY, INC.**

1 and 2 HP Dust Collectors

- Cast Aluminum Blowers
- High Efficiency
- Extremely Quiet
- Portable
- 5 Year Warranty

Visit: [www.dustboy.com](http://www.dustboy.com)

**DUST BOY, INC.**  
P.O. Box 278  
Arcanum, OH 45304

Free Brochure & Layout Information Available

Fax (937) 692-8266  
800-232-3878



**SELF-ADHESIVE FELT**  
70% WOOL

TAPES • STRIPS • TABS • DOTS

1-800-796-2333

APPROX. 1/16" & 1/8" THICK  
BROWN, GREEN, BLACK  
WHITE, AND SILVER GRAY

**UBDANN**  
PRODUCTS DIV.

9611 SOUTH COTTAGE GROVE AVE.  
CHICAGO, IL 60628  
FAX 773-375-2494

**Branding Irons**

Handcrafted by... as low as \$54.95

Signatures, logos, names. Any size or design.  
Optional temperature controller, drill press mount.  
Our personal service will save you money.  
Same-day quotations. Quick turnaround from order to delivery.

**BrandNew Industries, Inc**  
1-800-964-8251 [www.brandnew.net](http://www.brandnew.net)

**KREMER**  
PIGMENTS

**Shellac Flakes**

- with or without wax • light and extra light
- refined or crude • ruby shellac

Free catalog of woodfinishing supplies

Kremer Pigments Inc. - 228 Elizabeth Street  
New York, NY 10012 (800) 995-5501  
[www.kremer-pigments.com](http://www.kremer-pigments.com)



**New Dura-Bull**  
WOOD VENEER LAMINATE

Very bendable  
No glue bleed through  
True Grade "A"  
Over 90 species  
2'x 8' to 5' x 12'

Easy to work with!  
Lightweight  
Works great with world friendly adhesives

Available now from your local *CraftWood* authorized dealer

812-288-9201 Td **SRWOOD** 812-288-5225 Fax  
1801 Progress Way, Clarksville, IN 47129-9205  
On the web [www.craftwood-srwood.com](http://www.craftwood-srwood.com)



**AFRICAN EXOTIC HARDWOODS**

- BEST PRICES - DIRECT FROM SOURCE
- EXOTIC LUMBER, BLANKS AND BURLS
- LARGE OR SMALL ORDERS WELCOME
- SHIPPED PROMPTLY NATIONWIDE

CONTACT FABS AND MIKE TODAY (828) 658-8455 TEL.  
**CORMARK INTERNATIONAL** (828) 645-8364 FAX.  
181 REEMS CREEK ROAD, WEAVERVILLE, NC 28787



**WEST SYSTEM**

BOATBUILDERS SWEAR BY IT, and so will you.

Strong, waterproof WEST SYSTEM® Brand epoxy is more than a 2-part adhesive. It's a complete system of resin, hardeners, fillers and additives from which you can easily create the perfect bonding, coating and sealing agents for your wood or composite project.

For a free copy of the 30-page WEST SYSTEM® User Manual & Product Guide, write:

Gougeon Brothers, Inc.  
Dept. 44, P.O. Box 908  
Bay City, MI 48707  
989-684-7286 [www.westsystem.com](http://www.westsystem.com)

**Groff & Groff Lumber**

Exceptionally Fine Furniture & Instrument Grade Woods

PREMIUM WALNUT, CHERRY, CURLY CHERRY, BIRDSEYE AND TIGER MAPLE

Sawmill Direct • Slabs to 40" Wide • 75+ Unusual Native & Imported Species • Matching Flitches • Burls & Turning Blocks

Order 75 Domestic and Imported Species 4/4 - 16/4  
Custom Flooring & Wainscoting • Reclaimed Pine & Chestnut  
No Order Too Large or Too Small

858 Scotland Road, Quarryville, PA 17566  
1-800-342-0001 • 717-284-0001 • Fax 717-284-2400

National & International Shipping

**DOWNLOAD FREE PLAN**

7 Must-Have SHOP JIGS

[www.PlansNOW.com](http://www.PlansNOW.com)



**THE FURNITURE INSTITUTE OF MASSACHUSETTS**

Phillip C. Lowe, Instructor/Director

A 2-year Hands-on Program with Master Furniture Maker

116 Water Street  
Beverly, MA 01915  
(978) 922-0615

Summer Workshops available  
[www.furnituremakingclasses.com](http://www.furnituremakingclasses.com)




**CONOVER WORKSHOPS**

Educating America's Woodworkers for over 23 years!

Ph: 440-548-3491  
Fax: 440-548-2721


[www.conoverworkshops.com](http://www.conoverworkshops.com)



Quality German Workbenches  
1-800-32Bench

**Diefenbach Benches**  
33498 East US Highway 50  
Pueblo, CO 81006

[www.workbenches.com](http://www.workbenches.com)



**TOP-RATED SEA KAYAKS**  
Rugged, Ultra-Light, Beautiful Leader in Kayak Kits Since 1986



**PYGMY**  
KAYAKS SINCE 1986


CALL OR WRITE FOR OUR FREE COLOR CATALOG.  
(360) 385-6143, P.O. Box 1529, Dept. 98  
Port Townsend, WA 98368  
www.pygmyboats.com

blum Grass mepla  
**www.cabinetparts.com**  
Wilsonart Laminates



Rev-A-Shelf  
The one stop source for all your cabinet needs.


Accuride Salice KV



**Arbor Day... A Great Idea Grows**

In 1872, J. Sterling Morton gave the world a great idea. He created a holiday unlike any other, Arbor Day.

This year, plant Trees for America. For your free brochure, write: Trees for America, The National Arbor Day Foundation, Nebraska City, NE 68410.



**The National Arbor Day Foundation™**  
www.arborday.org

**QUARTERSAWN HARDWOODS & HIGHLY FIGURED LUMBER**

Ash, Cherry, Hard Maple, Red Oak, White Oak, Walnut, Sycamore, Mahogany, Hickory, and Birch.

Also, many Exotic Species in Stock.

**NEW** We now have Curly Bubinga, Curly Makore, + other figured exotics.

**WEST PENN HARDWOODS, INC.**  
(888) 636-WOOD (9663)  
www.westpennhardwoods.com

Innovative British Classics Unique Hand Tools



**m-powertools.com**

**EXOTIC & DOMESTIC HARDWOODS**  
LUMBER • PLYWOOD • VENEERS • TURNING BLOCKS • BURLS

**FINE WOOD CARVING:**

- Architectural Moldings • Capitals • Corbels • Onlays
- Door Panels • Fireplace Mantels • Specialty Molding

We specialize in small to medium size orders!

Over 80 species of hardwood in stock.

**Wood-Ply Lumber Corp.**  
100 Bennington Ave., Dept. FW  
Freeport, NY 11520


CALL FOR PRICE LIST:  
800-354-9002  
FAX 516-378-0345  
www.woodply.com

**... A PROPER SHOP APRON**

ALL DAY COMFORT, PROTECTION  
SPLIT LEG, X-BACK STRAPS  
STURDY 11OZ. NATURAL CANVAS  
REINFORCED CORNERS  
BRASS GROMMETS  
BELLOWS POCKETS  
FOR TAPE, TOOLS

**\$34.95**  
\$5.00 S&H

**CANVASGOODS**  
WWW.CANVASGOODS.COM  
1-866-742-5223




**Treen Mandrels**  
Treen (trē'an) Made of "tree"; wooden

With TREEN MANDRELS you can easily turn beautiful bottles and boxes with perfectly fitted lids. System includes 1-1/4" Lid & Bottle Mandrels, Morse Taper & special fittings for lids.

For more information, see our website at [www.bealltool.com](http://www.bealltool.com) or call or write:

Dept. FW  
The Beall Tool Company  
541 Swans Rd., NE Newark, OH 43055  
1(800)331-4718 Fax 1(740)345-5880



**GILMER WOOD CO.**  
Quality Domestic & Exotic Lumber

- Logs, blanks, squares
- Over 50 species in stock
- Thin woods, Assortments, Books
- Musical Instrument woods

Phone 503-274-1271  
2211 NW St. Helens Rd. Portland OR 97210  
Fax 503-274-9839 www.gilmerwood.com



**Sauer & Steiner**  
TOOLWORKS

HANDMADE A1  
\$2400 CDN

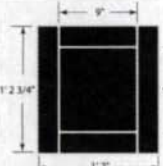
905.272.2939 - www.sauerandsteiner.com



**Design Intuition: CAD Redefined!**

Create professional blueprints for Mac OS X.

www.gizmolab.com/save/fw/2




**accurate and tear out free**

system/shelf pin holes in all materials with your plunge router professional appearance 32mm European system or traditional 1" centers

**MEG PRODUCTS** phone/fax 609-587-7187  
9 John Lenhardt Road  
Hamilton Square, NJ 08690  
www.megproducts.com



**Windsor Chairmaking Classes**  
With Marc Blanchette  
207-667-1818  
125 High St. Ellsworth, ME 04605  
On Maine's Coast by Acadia National Park  
chairmaker@midmaine.com



**Connecticut Valley School of Woodworking**

hands-on woodworking & furniture making classes nights, weekends & week-long classes

at the Manchester **WOODCRAFT\*** 249 Spencer St., Manchester, CT 06040

860.647.0303  
www.schoolofwoodworking.com



**TIMBER WOLF™**  
Band Saw Blades  
Swedish Silicon Steel ~ 1/8" - 2"  
www.Suffolkmachinery.com  
Free Catalog ~ 800-234-7297



**BRAZILIAN CHERRY**  
LUMBER, FLOORING & PLYWOOD

PRIME QUALITY HARDWOOD LUMBER & FLOORING  
THOUSANDS OF BOARD FEET  
ALL DIMENSIONS  
MANY UNUSUAL SPECIES IN STOCK

**RARE EARTH HARDWOODS**  
IMPORTER / MANUFACTURER

Tel 800-968-0074  
Fax 800-968-0094



# CLASSIFIED

The Classified rate is \$9.00 per word, 15 word min. Orders must be accompanied by payment, ads are non-commissionable. The WOOD & TOOL EXCHANGE is for private use by individuals only; the rate is \$15/line, minimum 3 lines. Send to: *Fine Woodworking Classified Ad Dept.*, PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. FAX 203-426-3434, Ph. (800) 926-8776, ext. 3310. Deadline for the March/April 2004 issue is December 12, 2003.

## Business Opportunity

SHOP SPACE—Includes use of industrial-grade machinery: panel saw, solid wood milling. Central dust collection. \$475 - \$825/mo. Brooklyn, NY. Professionals only. (718) 499-2954.

## Finishes

SPRAY-ON SUEDE. Line boxes in seconds. Free brochure (sample enclosed). DonJer Products, 13142 Murphy Road, Winnebago, IL 61088. 800-336-6537. www.donjer.com

## Hand Tools

PETE NIEDERBERGER—Vintage planes & parts, Always user friendly. Send \$5 for tool list #1. Box 887, Larkspur, CA 94977. (415) 924-8403. pniederber@aol.com

ANCIENT & MODERN TOOLS. Woodworking, mental working and other. Users and collectors. www.pennyfarthingtools.co.uk

## Hardware

DO IT YOURSELF Replacement hardware for cabinets, furniture, windows and closets. www.bainbridgemfg.com

## Instruction

HANDS-ON WORKSHOPS in beautiful Maine. Basic and Advanced. Twelve-week intensive. Center for Furniture Craftsmanship (207) 594-5611, www.woodschoolorg

MASTERPIECE SCHOOL OF FURNITURE offers 1-3 year program in traditional furniture making. Mendocino Coast, California. Summer classes available. Ph/Fax (707) 964-8798. www.masterpieceschool.com

BENJAMIN HOBBS Furniture Making Classes. Queen Anne and Chippendale chairs, chests, beds, tables, more. Hertford, NC. (252) 426-7815. www.hobbsfurniture.com

COME TO LEARN IN SCOTLAND - The Chippendale International School of Furniture offers a 30 week intensive career programme in Design, Making and Restoration. For further information phone: 011-44-1620-810680 or visit www.chippendale.co.uk

BLUE RIDGE MOUNTAINS, VA. One-year apprenticeship available to motivated individual. Saturated learning environment. Accommodations available, tuition. For more information call: Michael Maxwell, (540) 587-9543.

LEARN FURNITURE MAKING DURING your vacation in New Hampshire. Personal tuition, one-on-one, for beginners or experienced hobbyists. Tailored to your requirements. Weekdays or weekends. www.andersonfurniture.com

NEW ENGLAND SCHOOL of Architectural Woodworking. 35-week career training in architectural wood-working or 6-week summer intensive for the serious enthusiast. (413) 527-6103. (MA) www.nesaw.com

WOODWORKER ACADEMY, comprehensive entry level workshops and precision improvement are our specialty. San Francisco area (510) 521-1623 or www.woodworkeracademy.com

LONNIE BIRD'S SCHOOL OF FINE WOODWORKING Hands-on woodworking in an inspirational setting. lonniebird@earthlink.net, (865) 484-1145. www.lonniebird.com

WOODTURNING INSTRUCTION: Russ Zimmerman's Punta Gorda, Florida workshop or yours. (941) 575-4337 or www.learn2turn.com

TRADITIONAL HIGH-END FURNITURE design, finishing, carving, inlays, antiques. Intensive year apprenticeship. East Texas. (903) 769-1017.

## Machinery New/Used

FELDER BF6-31 FULL COMBINATION MACHINE, tilt-able Saw and Shaper, 12" Jointer/Planer. Excellent condition, single phase, 1994. Perfect for small business or enthusiastic hobbyist. \$5,490.00 call Joe: (916) 548-9637

WOODWORKING MACHINERY and supplies. Conestoga, Shop Fox, Kreg. Lots of supplies, good prices, free catalog! Conestoga Wood Machinery. 800-445-4669.

USED PORTABLE SAWMILLS! Buy/Sell. Call Sawmill Exchange: 800-459-2148, (205) 661-9821. US & Canada. www.sawmillexchange.com

## Miscellaneous

FREE INVENTION ASSESSMENT. Patent process, licensing for inventions, product improvements. Free info. 1-800-501-2252. franklinforge.com

GLASS SOURCE FOR WOODWORKERS. Glass and mirror custom cut, beveled, edged, etched, or grooved to your specifications. Shipped direct from our shop to yours. Call for free brochure, inquiries, or to place an order. Glass Source 1-800-588-7435.

KEEP YOUR FINE WOODWORKING back issues looking brand new. Store your treasured copies of *Fine Woodworking* in slipcases. Only \$8.95 plus S/H. CT residents add 6% sales tax. To order call: 1-800-888-8286.

## Musical Supplies

BUILD YOUR OWN violin, guitar, or dulcimer! Free catalog featuring kits and all the tools, finishing supplies and instructions needed to build your own instrument. Stewart-McDonald, Box 900-F, Athens, OH 45701. Call 800-848-2273. www.stewmac.com

PLANS KITS & SUPPLIES for musical instruments; harps, dulcimers, psalteries, banjos and more. Music-maker's Kits, Dept. FW, PO Box 2117, Stillwater, MN 55082. (651) 439-9120. www.musikit.com

## Plans & Kits

ROCKING CHAIR PLANS AND TEMPLATES for three sizes of rockers. www.haltaylor.com click on plans.

FULL SIZE FURNITURE LAYOUTS Drawn by: Philip C. Lowe. Catalog \$3. (978) 922-0615. 116 Water Street, Beverly, MA 01915. www.furnituremakingclasses.com

CARLYLE LYNCH MEASURED DRAWINGS—Museum and private collection furniture plans by Carlyle Lynch. Catalog \$2. P.O. Box 13007, Arlington, TX 76094. (817) 861-1619.

FULL-SIZE PLANS for building fine furniture. Catalog \$3. Furniture Designs, Inc., CK-104, 1827 Elmdale Avenue, Glenview, IL 60025. 1-800-657-7692. www.furnituredesigns.com

## Power Tools

LAMELLO BISCUIT JOINERS and Accessories/Parts/Repairs. Best prices, most knowledgeable. Call us for all your woodworking & solid surfacing needs. 800-789-2323. Select Machinery, Inc. www.selectmachineryinc.com

NAILERS AND STAPLERS at www.nailzone.com Top brands of tools and fasteners. Visit our website. (800) 227-2044.

## Wood

FLORIDA'S FINEST 100+ species, great quality inventory, sizes; personal selection/service. ALVA HARDWOODS, (239) 728-2484, 1-888-894-6229.

FIGURED CLARO WALNUT slabs, planks, blocks, dimensions suitable for small to very large projects. California Walnut Designs. 800-660-0203. www.woodnut.com

EISENBRAND EXOTIC HARDWOODS - Wide selection of imports. Reasonable prices. Quality guaranteed FREE brochure. 800-258-2587. (CA) www.eisenbran.com

CALIFORNIA'S FINEST BURLWOODS: Massive inventory, many varieties, all sizes, any use, direct, guaranteed. Established 30-years. Burl Tree, 800-785-BURL.

WALNUT SLABS/CROTCHES 18-in. to 80-in. wide to 16-ft. long. Figured claro, myrtle, elm, sycamore. Black acacia. (408) 847-8433. 877-wal-slab. From our sawmills. Gilroy, CA. www.bakerhardwoods.com

MESQUITE Cheap. (915) 585-7693.

COLLECTOR'S SPECIALTY WOODS "Rocky Mountain Dry" lumber, tops, burl slabs, flooring, blocks, bases-showroom/millroom/wood yard; www.cswoods.com (719) 746-2413. (CO)

OREGON'S FINEST MAPLE, redwood and buckeye burl. Quality materials for the carver, turner & box maker. Lumber available in fiddleback & curly maple 4/4 to 16/4. (503) 394-3077. www.burlwoodonline.com

SAWMILL DIRECT 100 species of exotics, turning, lumber, logs, slabs, musical instruments TROPICAL EXOTIC HARDWOODS OF LATIN AMERICA, LLC. Toll Free (888) 434-3031. www.anexotichardwood.com.

TIGER MAPLE, MAHOGANY, CHERRY; plain and figured. Wide boards, matched sets, 4/4 to 24/4. 200-ft. minimum. (570) 724-1895. www.irionlumber.com

BIRD'S-EYE AND CURLY MAPLE, 4/4 to 12/4 lumber, flitches, turning squares and blocks. Black walnut, cherry/quartersawn, and curly oak lumber. Dunlap Woodcrafts, Chantilly, VA. (703) 631-5147.

WESTERN RED CEDAR Vertical grain and clear Douglas fir. For more information call (541) 344-3275 or www.easycreeklumber.com

FLORIDA—FROM ASH TO ZEBRAWOOD with milling available, including custom, antique restoration and curved moldings. Hardwood Lumber of Lakeland. (863) 646-8681. FREE 877-710-3900.

DOMESTIC AND IMPORTED EXOTICS. For musical instruments, pool cues, knife handles and custom furniture. Price list. Exotic Woods, 1-800-443-9264. www.exoticwoods.com

REDWOOD BURL, RARE EXOTIC burlwood. Direct from logger. Table and clock slabs, turning blocks. Burl Country: (707) 725-3982. Fax 707-725-3306. www.burlcountry.com

ATTENTION VA/MD AREA WOODWORKERS. K/D quartersawn sycamore, red & white oak. Cherry, walnut, elm, apple, and other domestic hardwoods. Herbine Hardwoods, Leesburg, VA. (703) 771-3067.

QUALITY NORTHERN APPALACHIAN hardwood. Custom milling. Free delivery. Bundled, surfaced. Satisfaction guaranteed. Niagara Lumber, 800-274-0397 (NY) www.niagaralumber.com

## WOOD AND TOOL EXCHANGE

Limited to use by individuals only.

### For Sale

*Fine Woodworking* #1-164, excellent condition. \$475 plus shipping. (319) 346-1455.

INCA 10-IN. BANDSAW with accessories. Excellent condition. \$375/OBO, plus UPS shipping. (239) 498-8650.



**For quick access to their websites, go to ADVERTISER INDEX at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)**

Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #
143	Accuride International, p. 15	122	Diefenbach Benches, p. 126	102	Kremer Pigments, p. 126	169	Rosewood Studio, p. 93
20	Adams Wood Products, Inc., p. 94		Diefenbacher Tools, p. 126	150	Kuffel Creek Press, p. 93	45	Rousseau Company, p. 117
6	Airware America, p. 123	175	The Dogwood Institute, p. 9			74	Router Bits.com, p. 108
92	Allred & Associates, Inc., p. 23		Dovetail Restoration, p. 125	100	Laguna Tools, p. 105	31	SR Wood, p. 126
206	Amazon.com, p. 113	193	Drill Doctor, p. 15	119	Launstein Hardwoods, p. 121	51	The St. James Bay Tool Co., p. 125
4	American Furniture Design, p. 125	41	Dust Boy, Inc., p. 126	216	Lee Valley & Veritas, p. 109	153	Sandman Products, p. 124
64	Andrews Toolworks, p. 126				Leigh Industries, p. 36	68	Sauer Steiner, p. 127
55	Architectural Products By Outwater, p. 100	52	Eagle America, p. 23		Leigh Industries, p. 100	95	Sauers & Co. Processed Veneers, p. 123
56	Architectural Products By Outwater, p. 7	24	Eagle Tools, p. 113	73	Lie-Nielsen Toolworks, p. 101	93	Scherr's Cabinet & Doors, Inc., p. 93
196	Arrowmont School, p. 106	47	Eagle Woodworking, p. 125	13	Lignomat Moisture Meters, p. 103		School of Woodworking, p. 123
120	Ashman Technical, Ltd., p. 106	125	Engraving Arts, p. 125	168	The Long Island Woodworkers Club, p. 103	186	Sharp Tools USA, p. 123
88	Astragal Press, p. 125		Enviro-Safety Products, p. 100	163	The Lumberlady, p. 123	112	Shophot Books, Inc., p. 106
59	Australian School of Fine Furniture, p. 121	178	Epoxy Heads, p. 21	28	Luthiers Mercantile Intl., p. 103	43	Space Balls, p. 36
		136	Everlast Saw & Carbide Tools, p. 101			115	Specialty Tools, p. 125
					M-Power Tools, Ltd., p. 127	227	Stanley Works, p. 23
10	Ball & Ball Reproduction Hardware, p. 33	198	Felder USA, p. 111	177	Makita USA, Inc., p. 97	208	Stone Turners.com, p. 123
62	Bauhaus Apprenticeship Inst., p. 125		Fine Homebuilding Magazine, p. 99	176	Manny's Woodworker's Place, p. 121	82	Stubai Direct, p. 124
58	The Beall Tool Co., p. 127		Fine Woodworking's Tool Guide, p. 92	222	Mao Shan Machinery, p. 121	108	Suffolk Machinery, p. 127
204	Bear Mountain Boat Shop, p. 123		Fine Woodworking Magazine, p. 114-115	126	Marc Adams School of Woodworking, p. 28	26	Super Shop By Smithy, p. 26
105	Belcher Veneer Co., p. 123		Fine Woodworking on CD, p. 116		Marc Blanchette Windsor Chair, p. 127	159	Sutherland Tool, p. 125
12	Bench Dog, p. 28		Fine Woodworking Slipcases, p. 100	32	Mass Bay Wood Products, Inc., p. 124	226	System Three Resins, p. 117
140	Berea Hardwoods, p. 23	171	Forrest Manufacturing, p. 29	42	Maurice L. Condon Co., Inc., p. 113	89	Talarico Hardwoods, p. 125
212	Berkshire Veneer Co., p. 125	103	Fuji Industrial Sprayers, p. 113	33	McFeely's Square Drive, p. 19	109	Target Enterprises, p. 117
182	Better Built Corp., p. 108	71	The Furniture Inst. of Massachusetts, p. 126	81	Meg Products, p. 127		Taunton Books, p. 108, 122
191	Binks, p. 101			202	Micro Fence, p. 108	156	Tech Mark, Inc., p. 25
166	Bosch Tools, p. 20	209	General Manufacturing Co., Ltd., p. 28	84	Microplane, p. 93	127	Tech-Wood, Inc., p. 125
137	Brandnew Industries, p. 126	60	Gilmer Wood Company, p. 127	142	Micro-Surface Finishing Products, p. 125	25	Tenryu America, Inc., p. 33
78	Brookside Veneers, Ltd., p. 36	77	Gizmo Lab, p. 127	76	Miller Dowel Company, p. 28	53	Thewindorinstitute.com, p. 125
65	The Burgess Edge, p. 117		Global Machinery Company, p. 13	213	Mini Max USA, p. 19	197	Titebond, p. 101
		80	Goby's Walnut Wood Products, p. 125	214	Mini Max USA, p. 21	70	Tools for Working Wood, p. 124
179	CMT USA, Inc., p. 12	130	Good Hope Hardwoods, p. 123	215	Mini Max USA, p. 23		Traditional Woodworker, p. 119
154	CS Woods, p. 94	2	Gougeon Brothers, p. 126	86	Misugi Designs, p. 124		Trend, p. 9
	Cabinetparts.com, p. 127	1	Groff & Groff Lumber, p. 126			144	Turbinaire, p. 103
54	Cabparts, p. 100	147	Guillemont Kayaks, p. 126		Nora Hall, p. 124	145	Turbinaire, p. 106
87	Calvo Studio, p. 123			113	North Bennet Street School, p. 125	63	Vac-U-Clamp, p. 21
	Canvas Goods, p. 127	190	H. Gerstner & Sons, p. 7	116	Northwest Timber, p. 103	188	Vacuum Pressing Systems, p. 36
180	Carter Products, p. 9	37	HTC Products, Inc., p. 109	18	Northwest Woodworking Studio, p. 125	174	Veto Pro Pac, LLC, p. 93
223	Cerritos College, p. 123	203	Halder, Inc., p. 124			146	Viel Tools, Inc., p. 26
14	Certainly Wood, p. 126	5	Hamilton Books, p. 123	139	Omer Direct, p. 9	172	Viper Router Bits, p. 107
133	Chesapeake Light Craft, p. 106	97	Harris Woodworking, p. 124	207	Oneida Air Systems, p. 121	49	Virutex.Com, p. 21
132	Chips Fly.com, p. 126	210	Hartville Tool Company, p. 103	195	The Original Saw Company, p. 12	104	W. Moore Profiles, p. 21
165	Classic Designs By Matthew Burak, p. 113	40	Hearne Hardwoods, Inc., p. 117	11	Originalfurnitureplans.com, p. 123	160	WGB Glass, p. 36
	Classic Planes, p. 123	219	Hersaf/Safraneck, p. 28			106	West Penn Hardwoods, p. 127
36	Clayton Machine Corp., p. 26	35	Hida Tool & Hardware, p. 36	225	Packard Woodworks, p. 126	44	Whitechapel, p. 93
48	Colonial Saw Company, p. 33	16	Highland Hardware, p. 119	17	Panasonic Power Tools, p. 27	181	Whiteside Machine Co., p. 119
46	Colonial Times Clock Co., p. 125	99	Hoffmann Machine Co. Inc., p. 23	69	Peck Tool, p. 123	61	Wilke Machinery Co./ Bridgewood, p. 33
72	Conover Workshops, p. 126			170	Penn State Industries, p. 109	205	Williams & Hussey, p. 94
110	Cook Woods, p. 125	7	Iturra Design, p. 119	189	Pennsylvania College Of Technology, p. 7	167	Wood Rat, p. 108
8	Cormark International, p. 126	124	J.B. Dawn, p. 126	50	Philadelphia Windsor Chair, p. 126	27	Wood River Veneer, p. 124
138	Crown Plane, p. 123	217	J.P. Walsh & J. L. Marmo Ent., p. 7		Plans Now.com, p. 126	118	Woodcraft Supply, p. 117
38	CT Valley School of Woodworking, p. 127	141	The Japan Woodworker, p. 19	85	Pootatuck Corporation, p. 124	98	Woodcraft Supply University, p. 10
96	CT Valley School of Woodworking, p. 94	220	Jessem Tool Co., p. 19	164	Porter Cable, p. 35		Woodfinder, p. 123
194	Curly Woods, p. 123	23	Jet Equipment, p. 2-3	83	Pygmy Boats, Inc., p. 127	151	Woodjoy Tools, p. 125
94	Custom Leathercraft Mfg. Co., p. 108	79	Jet Equipment, p. 37			158	Woodmaster Power Tools, p. 103
121	The Cutting Edge, Inc., p. 124	149	Jet Equipment, p. 95	183	Quick Angle, p. 123	157	Woodmaster Power Tools, p. 25
		34	Jointech, p. 117				Woodpeckers, p. 119
173	Dakota County Technical College, p. 117	114	Journeyman Tool Co., p. 121	111	Rare Earth Hardwoods, p. 127	66	Wood-Ply Lumber Corp., p. 127
21	Dana Robes Wood Craftsmen, p. 124	161	Katana, p. 25	19	Ridge Carbide Tool Co., p. 124	107	Woodsmith Store, p. 26
22	Delmhorst Instrument Co., p. 122	131	Kay Industries, Inc., p. 113	148	Ridgid Power Tools, p. 17		Woodsmithstore.com, p. 124
39	Delta Machinery, p. 131		Kayne & Son, p. 125	29	Robert Larson Co., Inc., p. 126	128	The Woodworkers Choice, p. 124
192	DeVilbiss, p. 12	3	Keller & Company, p. 93	152	Rockingham Community College, p. 123	123	Woodworker's Supply, p. 94
75	Diamond Machining Technology, p. 119	187	Klingspor Corporation, p. 94	224	Ronk Electrical Industries, Inc., p. 121	67	Yesterday, p. 113
		30	Kreg Tool Company, p. 15				



1 of  
**4**  
FREE TOOLS

UP TO  
**\$500**  
IN ACCESSORIES

FIVE YEAR  
**5**  
WARRANTY

OVER  
**\$2000**  
IN SAVINGS

**X<sup>5</sup>**



## INTRODUCING DELTA X<sup>5</sup> TOOLS

**IF YOU'VE BEEN DREAMING OF A DELTA  
THIS DEAL IS YOUR WAKE UP CALL.**

When you buy one of our new X<sup>5</sup> tools, it's almost like putting money back in your pocket. Because all X<sup>5</sup> tools come with your choice of one of 4 free tools or a cash rebate. You'll also get over \$2000 in savings with Delta's X-treme Savings Book, up to \$500 in free accessories and a best in class 5-year warranty. And with a deal this good, your dream can become a reality. Call 1-800-438-2486 (US) or 1-800-463-3582 (Canada).

Just look for the Delta tools specially marked with X<sup>5</sup>.  
VISIT [DELTA MACHINERY.COM](http://DELTA MACHINERY.COM) FOR A FREE X<sup>5</sup> CATALOG.

**DELTA**

Your achievement. Our tools.

# PLANE FUN

The conventional wisdom in plane making is to strive for a tool that performs flawlessly, perhaps adding just a few personal touches.

Michael Flaherty takes a more whimsical approach to the craft, breathing life into an otherwise stoic art. "Wood," said Flaherty, "is a living, breathing, vibrant material that has its own life, personality, beauty, and humor." Whether it be a creature of the deep spouting shavings through its blow-hole, barnyard animals, a half-size miniature replica plow plane, metal and wooden miniatures of all shapes and styles, or bench-ready full-size models, Flaherty's mirthful approach reminds us to have fun with woodworking. To see more reader-made tools, check out Current Work on pp. 88-91.

